

# Vess R3600 Series / Vess J3600 *Product Manual*

Version 1.0

© 2019 PROMISE Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

# **About This Manual**

This Product Manual describes how to setup, use, and maintain the Vess R3600 external storage subsystem.

This manual includes a full table of contents, index, chapter task lists and numerous cross-references to help you find the specific information you are looking for.

The terms "Vess R3600" or "subsystem" are used in examples or descriptions throughout this manual to refer to any of the available Vess R3600 Series models. The terms "unit" or "device" can refer to any Vess R3600 Series or Vess J3600 Series model.

# Manual Overview

The manual is organized into chapters as follows:

- Introduction, this chapter provides a general overview of the available devices in the Vess R3600 Series.
- **Hardware Installation** describes the steps necessary for installing subsystem hardware including installing hard disks and placing the device into a rack system.
- WebPAM PROe System Configuration provides a more detailed description of the various menus used for managing the Vess R3600 Series and connected Vess J3600 Series expansion devices.
- **Managing with the CLI** describes using the CLI to manage the Vess R3600 Series through the network or via serial connection.
- **Contacting Technical Support** includes how to contact technical support, how to return a system for repair, and warranty information.

This manual includes are four levels of notices:



# Warning

A Warning notifies you of probable equipment damage or loss of data, or the possibility of physical injury, and how to avoid them.



## Caution

A Caution informs you of possible equipment damage or loss of data and how to avoid them.



## Important

An Important message calls attention to an essential step or point required to complete a task, including things often missed.



## Note

A Note provides helpful information such as hints or alternative ways of doing a task.

### **Regulatory compliance notices**

Regulatory compliance identification numbers

For the purpose of regulatory compliance certifications and identification, this product has been assigned a unique regulatory model number. The regulatory model number can be found on the product nameplate label, along with all required approval markings and information. When requesting compliance information for this product, always refer to this regulatory model number. The regulatory model number is not the marketing name or model number of the product.

### Avis de conformité réglementaire

Numéros d'identification de conformité réglementaire

Un numéro de modèle réglementaire unique a été attribué à ce produit aux fins des certifications de conformité réglementaire et d'identification. Le numéro de modèle réglementaire se trouve sur l'étiquette de la plaque signalétique du produit, ainsi que toutes les marques d'homologation et les informations requises. Lorsque vous demandez des informations sur la conformité de ce produit, veuillez toujours vous référer à ce numéro de modèle réglementaire est différent du nom commercial ou du numéro de modèle du produit.

### **Safety precautions**

Retain and follow all product safety and operating instructions. Always refer to the documentation (printed or electronic) supplied with your product. If there is a conflict between this document and the product documentation, the product documentation takes precedence. Observe all warnings on the product and in the operating instructions to reduce the risk of bodily injury, electric shock, fire, and damage to the equipment.

### Consignes de sécurité

Conservez et respectez toutes les consignes de sécurité et d'utilisation du produit. Reportez-vous toujours la documentation (imprimée ou sous forme électronique) fournie avec votre produit. En cas de conflit entre ce document et la documentation du produit, la documentation du produit a priorité. Respectez tous les avertissements figurant sur le produit et dans les instructions d'utilisation pour réduire le risque de blessures corporelles, d'électrocution, d'incendie et d'endommagement du produit.

### **General precautions**

### CAUTION:

For Class A products only: The installation and maintenance of products must be carried out by qualified personnel.

If the product sustains damage requiring service, disconnect the product from all power sources and refer servicing to a PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. authorized service provider. Examples of damage requiring service include:

- The power cord, extension cord, or plug has been damaged.
- Liquid has been spilled on the product or an object has fallen into the product.
- The product has been exposed to rain or water.
- The product has been dropped or damaged.
- The product does not operate normally when you follow the operating instructions.

To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the product:

- Place the product away from radiators, heat registers, stoves, amplifiers, or other products that produce heat.
- Never use the product in a wet location.
- Avoid inserting foreign objects through openings in the product.
- Move products with casters carefully. Avoid quick stops and uneven surfaces.



These symbols on power supplies or systems indicate that the equipment is supplied by multiple sources of power.

**WARNING**: To reduce the risk of injury from electric shock, remove all power cords to completely disconnect power from the system.



This symbol indicates the presence of a moving fan blade. If the spinning blades are contacted, the potential for injury exists.

**WARNING**: Hazardous moving parts. Keep away from moving fan blades. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

### **Précautions générales**

ATTENTION:

Pour les produits de classe A seulement : L'installation et l'entretien des produits doivent être effectués par un personnel qualifié uniquement.

Si le produit a subit des dommages nécessitant une réparation, débranchez-le de la source d'alimentation électrique et contactez un fournisseur de service autorisé de TECHNOLOGIE PROMISE INC. pour effectuer les réparations. Exemples de dommages nécessitant une réparation :

- Le cordon d'alimentation, la rallonge ou la fiche ont été endommagés.
- Du liquide a été renversé sur le produit ou un objet lourd est tombé sur le produit.
- Le produit a été exposé à la pluie ou à l'eau.
- Le produit est tombé ou a été endommagé.
- Le produit ne fonctionne pas correctement même lorsque vous suivez les instructions d'utilisation.

Pour réduire le risque de blessures ou d'endommagement du produit :

- Placez le produit loin des radiateurs, des registres de chaleur, des cuisinières, des amplificateurs ou d'autres produits qui produisent de la chaleur.
- N'utilisez pas le produit dans un endroit humide.
- Évitez d'insérer des corps étrangers dans les fentes du produit.
- Déplacez les produits avec des roulettes avec précaution. Évitez les arrêts brusques et les surfaces inégales.



Ces symboles sur les sources d'alimentation ou sur les systèmes indiquent que l'équipement est alimenté par plusieurs sources d'alimentation.

**AVERTISSEMENT** : Pour réduire le risque de blessures par électrocution, débranchez tous les cordons d'alimentation pour couper complètement l'alimentation électrique du système.



Ce symbole indique la présence d'un ventilateur avec des pales en mouvement. Elles posent un risque de blessures en cas de contact.

**AVERTISSEMENT** : Pièces mobiles dangereuses. Évitez de toucher les pales du ventilateur. Pour réduire le risque de blessures causées par une surface chaude, laissez-la refroidir avant de la toucher.

### Precautions for maintaining and servicing products

To reduce the risk of electric shock or damage to the equipment when installing, maintaining, or servicing products, observe the following precautions::

- Some products contain power supplies that are capable of producing hazardous energy levels. Refer to the
  documentation included with your product to determine whether it contains these power supplies. The
  installation of internal options and routine maintenance and service of this product should be performed by
  individuals who are knowledgeable about the procedures, precautions, and hazards associated with
  equipment containing hazardous energy levels.
- Allow the product to cool before removing covers and touching internal components.
- Do not use conductive tools that could bridge live parts.
- Remove all watches, rings, or loose jewelry when working in hot-plug areas of an energized server, storage, networking, or rack product.
- Some products have covers or doors to access hot-plug components and may allow access to hazardous energy circuits or moving fans.
- The doors should remain locked during normal operation.

OR

- The server, storage, networking, or rack product should be installed in a controlled access location where only qualified personnel have access.
- Power down the equipment and disconnect all power cords before removing any access covers for non-hot-plug areas.
- Do not replace non-hot-plug components while power is applied to the product. First, shut down the product and disconnect all power cords.
- Do not exceed the level of repair specified in the procedures in the product documentation. All troubleshooting and repair procedures are detailed to allow only subassembly or module-level repair.
   Because of the complexity of the individual boards and subassemblies, do not attempt to make repairs at the component level or to make modifications to any printed wiring board. Improper repairs can create a safety hazard.
- For floor-standing products, install and extend bottom stabilizers before installing options and boards.
- Verify that the AC power supply branch circuit that provides power to the rack is not overloaded. This will
  reduce the risk of personal injury, fire, or damage to the equipment. The total rack load should not exceed
  80 percent of the branch circuit rating. Consult the electrical authority having jurisdiction over your facility
  wiring and installation requirements.

### Précautions pour l'entretien et la maintenance des produits

Pour réduire le risque de choc électrique ou d'endommagement de l'équipement pendant l'installation, l'entretien ou la maintenance du produit, observez les précautions suivantes :

 Certains produits contiennent des sources d'alimentation qui sont capables de produire des niveaux d'énergie dangereux. Reportez-vous à la documentation fournie avec votre produit pour déterminer s'il contient ces sources d'alimentation. L'installation de composants internes et l'entretien et la maintenance de routine de ce produit doivent être effectués seulement par des personnes qui connaissent bien les procédures, les précautions et les dangers associés à un équipement contenant des niveaux d'énergie dangereux.

- Laissez le produit se refroidir avant d'ouvrir les capots et de toucher les composants internes.
- N'utilisez pas d'outils conducteurs qui pourraient faire le pont avec des pièces sous tension.
- Retirez vos montres, bagues ou bijoux lorsque vous travaillez dans les zones de connexion à chaud d'un serveur, d'un système de stockage, d'un réseau ou d'un produit en rack sous tension.
- Certains produits ont des capots ou des portes permettant d'accéder aux composants remplaçables à chaud ; cela peut vous exposer aux circuits d'énergie dangereux ou aux ventilateurs en mouvement.
- Ces portes doivent être fermées et verrouillées tout le temps pendant le fonctionnement normal.
- ΟU
- Le serveur, le système de stockage, le réseau ou le produit en rack doivent être installés dans un endroit à accès contrôlé pour que seul le personnel qualifié ait accès.
- Mettez l'équipement hors tension et débranchez tous les cordons d'alimentation avant d'ouvrir les capots d'accès aux zones non remplaçables à chaud.
- Ne remplacez jamais les composants non remplaçables à chaud si le produit est toujours connecté à l'alimentation. Éteignez en premier le produit et débranchez tous les cordons d'alimentation.
- Ne dépassez pas le niveau de réparation spécifié dans les procédures de la documentation du produit. Toutes les procédures de dépannage et de réparation sont détaillées pour ne permettre que la réparation au niveau du sous-assemblage ou du module. À cause de la complexité des cartes et des sous-assemblages individuels, n'essayez pas d'effectuer des réparations au niveau des composants ou d'apporter des modifications à une carte de câblage imprimée. Des réparations incorrectes peuvent créer un risque de sécurité.
- Pour les produits installés sur pied, installez et rallongez les stabilisateurs de plancher avant d'installer les composants et les cartes.
- Vérifiez que le circuit de dérivation de l'alimentation CA qui alimente le rack n'est pas surchargé. Cela réduira le risque de blessures corporelles, d'incendie et d'endommagement de l'équipement. La charge totale du rack ne doit jamais dépasser 80 % de la capacité nominale du circuit de dérivation. Consultez la compagnie électrique responsable des exigences du câblage et de l'installation de votre emplacement.

### Precautions for power products

### Power cords

To reduce the risk of electric shock or damage to the equipment:

- Use an approved power cord. If you have questions about the type of power cord to use, contact your PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. authorized service provider.
- If you have not been provided with a power cord for your product or for any AC-powered option intended for your product, purchase a power cord that is approved for use in your country.

- You must use a power cord rated for your product and for the voltage and current marked on the electrical ratings label of the product. The voltage and current rating of the cord must be greater than the voltage and current rating marked on the product.
- Do not place objects on AC power cords or cables. Arrange them so that no one may accidentally step on or trip over them.
- Do not pull on a cord or cable. When unplugging from the electrical outlet, grasp the cord by the plug.
- Make sure that the total ampere rating of all products plugged into an extension cord or power strip does not exceed 80 percent of the ampere ratings limit for the extension cord or power strip.
- Do not disable the power cord grounding plug. The grounding plug is an important safety feature.
- Plug the power cord into a grounded (earthed) electrical outlet that is easily accessible at all times.

#### **Power supplies**

Hot-plug power supplies are not designed to be removed or installed with AC power connected to the power supply. To reduce the risk of electric shock or damage to the equipment when handling hot-plug power supplies:

- Install the power supply before connecting the power cord to the power supply.
- Unplug the power cord before removing the power supply from the product.
- If the system has multiple sources of power, you must unplug all AC power cords from the power supplies to completely disconnect power from the system.

#### Batteries



**WARNING!** Some PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. products may contain internal replaceable battery cells or battery packs. There is risk of fire, burns, or explosion if the battery pack is not handled properly. To reduce the risk of personal injury:

- Do not attempt to recharge the battery.
- Do not disassemble, crush, puncture, short external contacts, or dispose of the battery in fire or water.
- Replace only with the PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. spare battery designated for this product. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local disposal requirements.
- For battery holders (for example, coin cells), observe the correct polarity when changing the battery/cell. There is a danger of explosion if the battery is installed incorrectly.

### Précautions relatives aux produits électriques

### **Cordons d'alimentation**

Pour réduire le risque de choc électrique ou d'endommagement de l'équipement :

- Utilisez uniquement un cordon d'alimentation approuvé. Si vous avez des questions sur le type de cordon d'alimentation à utiliser, contactez votre fournisseur de services autorisé de TECHNOLOGIE PROMISE INC.
- Si vous n'avez pas reçu de cordon d'alimentation avec votre produit ou pour toute option d'alimentation CA destinée à votre produit, achetez un cordon d'alimentation qui est approuvé par les autorités compétentes pour utilisation dans votre pays.
- Vous devez utiliser un cordon d'alimentation adapté à votre produit et à la tension et au courant indiqués sur l'étiquette du produit. La tension et le courant nominal du cordon doivent être supérieurs à la tension et au courant nominal indiqués sur le produit.
- Ne placez aucun objet sur les cordons d'alimentation ou les câbles. Arrangez-les de manière à réduire le risque que quelqu'un ne marche ou ne trébuche dessus.
- Ne tirez pas sur un cordon ou un câble. Lorsque vous débranchez l'appareil de la prise électrique, saisissez le cordon d'alimentation par la fiche.
- Assurez-vous que l'ampérage total de tous les produits branchés sur une rallonge ou une barrette d'alimentation ne dépasse pas 80 % de l'ampérage maximal de la rallonge ou de la barrette d'alimentation.
- Ne modifiez pas la fiche de mise à la terre du cordon d'alimentation. La fiche de mise à la terre est un élément de sécurité important.
- Branchez le cordon d'alimentation sur une prise électrique (reliée à la terre) qui est facilement accessible tout le temps.

### **Alimentations électriques**

Les sources d'alimentation remplaçables à chaud ne sont pas conçues pour être débranchées ou installées lorsque l'alimentation CA est toujours connectée à la source d'alimentation. Pour réduire le risque de choc électrique ou d'endommagement de l'équipement lors de la manipulation de sources d'alimentation remplaçables à chaud :

- Installez la source d'alimentation avant de raccorder le cordon d'alimentation à la source d'alimentation.
- Débranchez le cordon d'alimentation avant de débrancher la source d'alimentation du produit.
- Si le système utilise plusieurs sources d'alimentation, vous devez débrancher tous les cordons d'alimentation CA de toutes les sources d'alimentation pour couper complètement l'alimentation du système.

Batteries



**AVERTISSEMENT !** Certains produits de PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. peuvent contenir des piles internes remplaçables ou des batteries. Il y a un risque d'incendie, de brûlures ou d'explosion si la batterie n'est pas manipulée correctement. Pour réduire le risque de blessures corporelles :

• N'essayez pas de recharger la batterie.

- Ne pas démonter, écraser, perforer, court-circuiter les contacts externes ou jeter la batterie dans un feu ou de l'eau.
- Remplacez seulement avec la pile de rechange de PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. conçue pour ce produit. Jetez les piles usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant et aux exigences locales en matière d'élimination.
- Pour les porte-piles (par exemple, les piles bouton), respectez la polarité lors du remplacement de la pile / de la pile bouton. Il y a un risque d'explosion si la pile est mise incorrectement.

### Compliance

### **Global notice for Class A equipment**

Operation of this equipment in a residential environment could cause radio interference.

### **Federal Communications Commission notice**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



For questions regarding this product, go to the PROMISE TECHNOLOGY INC. Support Center Website: http://www.promise.com

For questions regarding this FCC SDoC, contact us by mail or telephone:

- PROMISE TECHNOLOGY USA
- 580 Cottonwood Drive, Milpitas, CA 95035, USA
- Email: sales@promise.com

### Class A equipment

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at personal expense.

### Canada (Avis Canadian)

Class A equipment This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations. CAN ICES-3(A)/NMB-3(A) Cet appareil numérique de la class A respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.CAN ICES-3(A)/NMB-3(A) **European Union** 

European Union Regulatory Notice Products bearing the CE marking comply with applicable EU Directives:

# Œ

WARNING: This equipment is compliant with Class A of EN55032. In a residential environment this equipment may cause radio interference.

### Japan

VCCI notice

この装置は、クラスA機器です。この装置を住宅環境で使用すると電波妨害 を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう 要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A

### Korea

A 급 기기(업무용 방송통신기기) 이 기기는 업무용(A 급)으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기이오니 판매자 또는 사용자는 이점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정 외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.

### Taiwan

BSMI notices Class A EMI warning message 警告使用者: 此為甲類資訊技術設備,於居住環境中使用時,可能會造成射頻擾動,在此種情況下,使用者會被要求 採取某些適當的對策。

About This Manual	1
Manual Overview	
	1
Features	1
Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 Models	2
Specifications	3
Hardware	6
FRONT VIEW	6
BACK OF VESS R3600	7
BACK OF VESS J3600	
HARDWARE INSTALLATION	12
UNPACKING	13
Packing List	
MOUNTING THE VESS ENCLOSURE IN A RACK	14
INSTALLING PHYSICAL DRIVES	
Number of Drives Required	
DRIVE SLOT NUMBERING	19
Installing Your Drives	20
MAKING MANACEMENT CONNECTIONS	22
Serial management connection	
Serial management connection	
Serial management connection Network management connection Making Data Connections	
Serial management connection         Network management connection         Making Data Connections         ISCSI Options	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS.	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS. FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH	
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS. FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH FIBRE CHANNEL SAN CONNECTIONS	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 26 27 28 29 29
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION Network MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH FIBRE CHANNEL SAN CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL DAS CONNECTIONS	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 27 28 29 29 30
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION Network MANAGEMENT CONNECTION MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH FIBRE CHANNEL DAS CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL DAS DATA PATH	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 25 26 27 28 29 29 29 30 30
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION Network management connection MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH FIBRE CHANNEL DAS CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL DAS CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL DAS DATA PATH VESS R3600 WITH JBOD EXPANSION	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 27 28 29 29 29 29 30 30 31
SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTIONS SERIAL MANAGEMENT CONNECTION Network management connection MAKING DATA CONNECTIONS ISCSI OPTIONS 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN CONNECTIONS SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC ISCSI SFP+ FIBER OPTIC CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL SAN DATA PATH FIBRE CHANNEL SAN CONNECTIONS FIBRE CHANNEL DAS CONNECTIONS FIBER CHANNEL DAS DATA PATH Vess R3600 with JBOD Expansion DUEL CONTROLLER EXPANSION WITH VESS R3600	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 26 27 28 29 29 29 29 30 30 31 32
Serial management connection         Network management connection         Making Data Connections         ISCSI Options         1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN connections         10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN connections         SFP+ Fiber Optic ISCSI         SFP+ Fiber Optic connections         Fibre Channel SAN data path         Fibre Channel DAS connections         Fibre Channel DAS data path         Vess R3600 with JBOD Expansion         Duel Controller Expansion with Vess R3600         Single Controller Expansion with Vess R3600	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 26 27 28 29 29 29 30 30 30 31 32 33
Serial Management Connections Network Management connection Making Data Connections ISCSI Options 1000 BASE-T ISCSI SAN connections 10G BASE-T ISCSI SAN connections SFP+ Fiber Optic ISCSI SFP+ Fiber Optic connections. Fibre Channel SAN data path Fibre Channel SAN connections Fibre Channel DAS connections Fibre Channel DAS data path. Vess R3600 with JBOD Expansion Duel Controller Expansion with Vess R3600 Single Controller Expansion with Vess R3600 Connecting the Power	22 23 23 25 25 25 25 26 27 28 29 29 29 29 30 30 30 31 31 32 33

FRONT LED BEHAVIOR	
Vess R3600 Power Supply Components	
Controller LEDs	
CONTROLLER LED BEHAVIOR	
10G Port LED Behavior on Vess R3600xi and Vess R3600ti	41
RESETTING THE DEFAULT PASSWORD	
WEBPAM PROE - SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	45
LOGGING INTO WEBPAM PROE	
Choosing the Display Language	
Perusing the Interface	
LOGGING OUT OF WEBPAM PROE	
LICENSE	51
VIEWING THE STORAGE NETWORK	
Logging onto a Subsystem	
Dashboard	
Generating a Service Report	
CREATING A SHARED STORAGE POOL	
Pool List	
Extending a Storage Pool with JBOD	
CREATING SPARE DRIVE	
CREATING A VOLUME	60
VOLUME LIST	61
SNAPSHOTS	
CLONES	
SNAPSHOTS	
LUN Mapping and Masking	
Adding a LUN Map	
Editing a LUN Map	
DELETING A LUN MAP	
Enabling and Disabling LUN Masking	
CREATING A NAS SHARE	
VIEWING NAS SHARE INFORMATION	
NAS SHARE PROTOCOLS	71
CHANGING SMB SETTINGS	
CHANGING FTP SETTINGS	
CHANGING NFS SETTINGS	
CHANGING HTTP SETTINGS	

USING THE NAS USER LIST.	USING THE NAS USER INFORMATION       74         To VIEW NAS USER INFORMATION       77         To CHANGE NAS USER INFORMATION       77         To REMOVE A NAS USER       77         ADD NAS USER       77         To REMOVE A NAS USER       77         ADD NAS USERS       77         To ADD A SINGLE USER FOR THE NAS       76         To ADD A MULTIPLE USERS FOR THE NAS       76         NAS GROUP SETTINGS       76         QUERY USER GROUPS       86         QUERY USER GROUP SETTINGS       86         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       86         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       87         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       86         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       86         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       86         To CHANGE USER GROUP       87         DOMAIN CONFIGURATION       82         To SET A WORKGROUP       83         To SET A WORKGROUP       83         To REFRESH DOMAIN DATA       84         ACL SETTING       94         ADDING A NEW USER       94         ADDING A NEW USER       94         ADDING A NEW USER       95         CHANGING USER STRINGS       94 <th>Managing NAS Accounts</th> <th>76</th>	Managing NAS Accounts	76
To View NAS User INFORMATION	To View NAS User INFORMATION	USING THE NAS USER LIST	76
To change NAS User password	To change NAS User password	To View NAS User Information	77
TO REMOVE A NAS USER	To REMOVE A NAS USER	To change NAS User password	77
Add NAS Users77To Add A single user for the NAS78To Add A MULTIPLE USERS FOR THE NAS78To REMOVE MULTIPLE USERS FOR THE NAS78To REMOVE MULTIPLE USERS FOR THE NAS79NAS GROUP SETTINGS80Query User Groups80Using the NAS Group list80To View Group Members80Add User Group and choose members81To change User Group settings81To change User Group Settings81Domain Configuration82Domain Settings83To Enable a Domain83To Set a Workgroup83To Referesh Domain Data83AcL Setting90Abding Windows ACL86Management User91Changing User Passwords92Deleting A User Passwords92Deleting A User Passwords93Deleting A User Subsystem Information94Restarting the Subsystem Information94	Abd NAS Users       77         To Add A SINGLE USER FOR THE NAS.       76         To Add A MULTPLE USERS FOR THE NAS       77         To REMOVE MULTPLE USERS FOR THE NAS       77         NAS GROUP SETTINGS       86         QUERY USER GROUPS.       86         Using the NAS Group Batt       86         To View Group Members.       86         Add User Group And CHOOSE MEMBERS.       86         To Change User Group And CHOOSE MEMBERS.       87         To REMOVE A USER GROUP SETTINGS.       87         To REMOVE A USER GROUP.       87         Domain Configuration.       82         Domain Configuration.       83         To Enable a Domain.       83         To Enable a Domain.       83         To Set a WorkGroup.       84         To REFRESH DOMAIN DATA.       84         ACL SETTING       84         Using Windows ACL.       86         MAAGEMENT USER       97         Changing User Passwords.       97         Changing User Strings. <td>To remove a NAS User</td> <td>77</td>	To remove a NAS User	77
To add a single user for the NAS	To ADD A SINGLE USER FOR THE NAS	ADD NAS USERS	77
To add a multiple users for the NAS	To ADD A MULTIPLE USERS FOR THE NAS	To add a single user for the NAS	
To REMOVE MULTIPLE USERS FROM THE NAS USERS LIST	To REMOVE MULTIPLE USERS FROM THE NAS USERS LIST	To add a multiple users for the NAS	
NAS GROUP SETTINGS       80         QUERY USER GROUPS       80         USING THE NAS GROUP LIST       80         To View Group Members       80         ADD USER GROUP AND CHOOSE MEMBERS       81         To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS       81         To REMOVE A USER GROUP       81         DOMAIN CONFIGURATION       82         DOMAIN SETTINGS       83         To ENABLE A DOMAIN       83         To SET A WORKGROUP       83         To REFRESH DOMAIN DATA       83         ACL SETTING       84         USING WINDOWS ACL       86         MANAGEMENT USER       90         ADDING A NEW USER       91         CHANGING USER SETTINGS       92         DELETING LUSER       93         SETTING USER FUTIONS       93         DELETING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION       94         RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM       95	NAS Group settings       86         QUERY USER GROUPS	To REMOVE MULTIPLE USERS FROM THE NAS USERS LIST	79
QUERY USER GROUPS	QUERY USER GROUPS	NAS GROUP SETTINGS	80
USING THE NAS GROUP LIST	USING THE NAS GROUP LIST	QUERY USER GROUPS	
To View Group Members       80         Add User Group and choose members       81         To change User Group settings       81         To remove a User Group       81         Domain Configuration       82         Domain Settings       83         To Enable a Domain       83         To Refresh Domain Data       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL       86         Management User       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Deleting Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	To View Group Members	Using the NAS GROUP LIST	
Add User Group and choose members       81         To change User Group settings.       81         To remove a User Group       81         Domain Configuration       82         Domain Settings.       83         To Enable a Domain       83         To Refresh Domain Data.       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL.       86         Management User       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings.       92         Delating a User       93         Setting Subsystem Information       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	Add User Group and choose members       8         To change User Group settings       8         To REMOVE A USER GROUP       8         Domain Configuration       8         Domain Settings       8         To Enable A Domain       8         To Set A WorkGROUP       8         To Refresh Domain Data       8         ACL Setting       8         Using Windows ACL       8         Management User       90         Adding a New User       90         Changing User Passwords       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User Setting Subsystem Information       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       96         Shutting The Subsystem After a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Encloser Topology       97         Viewing Encloser Topology       97	To View Group Members	
To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS	To CHANGE USER GROUP SETTINGS	Add User Group and choose members	
To REMOVE A USER GROUP       81         DOMAIN CONFIGURATION       82         DOMAIN SETTINGS       83         To ENABLE A DOMAIN       83         To SET A WORKGROUP       83         To REFRESH DOMAIN DATA       83         ACL SETTING       84         USING WINDOWS ACL       86         MANAGEMENT USER       90         Adding a New User       91         CHANGING USER SETTINGS       92         CHANGING USER PASSWORDS       92         DELETING A USER       93         SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS       93         DEVICE       94         VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION       94         RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM       95	To REMOVE A USER GROUP	To change User Group settings	
Domain Configuration82Domain Settings83To Enable a Domain83To Set a Workgroup83To Refresh Domain Data83ACL Setting84Using Windows ACL86Management User90Adding a New User91Changing User Settings92Deleting a User Passwords92Deleting a User Subscriptions93Setting User Subscriptions93Device94Viewing Subsystem Information94Restarting the Subsystem95	Domain Configuration       82         Domain Settlings       83         To Enable a Domain       83         To Set a Workgroup       83         To Refresh Domain Data       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL       86         Management User       90         Abding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting Subsystem Information       94         Restarting The Subsystem       94         Restarting The Subsystem After a Shutdown       94         Device View       95         Viewing Enclosure Topology       96	To remove a User Group	
DOMAIN SETTINGS.83TO ENABLE A DOMAIN.83TO SET A WORKGROUP83TO REFRESH DOMAIN DATA.83ACL SETTING84USING WINDOWS ACL.86MANAGEMENT USER90Adding a New User91CHANGING USER SETTINGS92CHANGING USER PASSWORDS92DELETING A USER93SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS93DEVICE94VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION94RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM95	Domain Settings	DOMAIN CONFIGURATION	82
To Enable a Domain.       83         To Set a Workgroup       83         To Refresh Domain Data.       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL.       86         Management User       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting Subsystem Information       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	To Enable a Domain	Domain Settings	
To Set a Workgroup       83         To Refresh Domain Data       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL       86         MANAGEMENT USER       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting Subsystem Information       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	To Set a Workgroup	TO ENABLE A DOMAIN	
To Refresh Domain Data       83         ACL Setting       84         Using Windows ACL       86         Management User       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         Delvice       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94	TO REFRESH DOMAIN DATA	TO SET A WORKGROUP	
ACL Setting	ACL SETTING       84         USING WINDOWS ACL       86         MANAGEMENT USER       90         Adding a New User       97         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         DEVICE       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       96         Shutting Down the Subsystem       96         Restarting the Subsystem After a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Enclosure Topology       96	To Refresh Domain Data	
USING WINDOWS ACL	USING WINDOWS ACL	ACL SETTING	
MANAGEMENT USER       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         Device       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	MANAGEMENT USER       90         Adding a New User       91         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         Device       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95         Shutting The Subsystem After a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Enclosure Topology       96	Using Windows ACL	
Adding a New User       .91         Changing User Settings       .92         Changing User Passwords       .92         Deleting a User       .93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       .93         Device       .94         Viewing Subsystem Information       .94         Restarting the Subsystem       .95	Adding a New User       97         Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       92         Deleting a User       92         Setting User Event Subscriptions       92         DEVICE       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       96         Shutting Down the Subsystem After a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Enclosure Topology       96	Management User	90
Changing User Settings       92         Changing User Passwords       92         Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         Device       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95	CHANGING USER SETTINGS       92         CHANGING USER PASSWORDS       92         DELETING A USER       93         SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS       93         DEVICE       94         VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION       94         RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM       96         SHUTTING DOWN THE SUBSYSTEM       96         DEVICE VIEW       97         VIEWING ENCLOSURE TOPOLOGY       96	Adding a New User	91
Changing User Passwords	CHANGING USER PASSWORDS       92         DELETING A USER       93         SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS       93         DEVICE       94         VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION       94         RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM       94         SHUTTING DOWN THE SUBSYSTEM       94         RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM       96         DEVICE VIEW       97         VIEWING ENCLOSURE TOPOLOGY       98	Changing User Settings	92
DELETING A USER	Deleting a User       93         Setting User Event Subscriptions       93         Device       94         Viewing Subsystem Information       94         Restarting the Subsystem       95         Shutting Down the Subsystem       96         Restarting the Subsystem After a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Enclosure Topology       96	Changing User Passwords	92
SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS	SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS	DELETING A USER	93
DEVICE	DEVICE 94 VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION 94 RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM 95 SHUTTING DOWN THE SUBSYSTEM 96 RESTARTING THE SUBSYSTEM AFTER A SHUTDOWN 96 DEVICE VIEW 97 VIEWING ENCLOSURE TOPOLOGY 99	SETTING USER EVENT SUBSCRIPTIONS	93
Viewing Subsystem Information	VIEWING SUBSYSTEM INFORMATION	Device	94
Restarting the Subsystem	Restarting the Subsystem       96         Shutting Down the Subsystem       96         Restarting the Subsystem after a Shutdown       96         Device View       97         Viewing Enclosure Topology       98	Viewing Subsystem Information	
	Shutting Down the Subsystem	Restarting the Subsystem	
SHUTTING DOWN THE SUBSYSTEM	Restarting the Subsystem after a Shutdown 96 Device View 97 Viewing Enclosure Topology 99	Shutting Down the Subsystem	
Restarting the Subsystem after a Shutdown	Device View	Restarting the Subsystem after a Shutdown	
Device View	Viewing Enclosure Topology	Device View	97
Viewing Enclosure Topology		Viewing Enclosure Topology	
	Viewing Enclosure Information	Viewing Enclosure Information	

Viewing Power Supply Status	
Locating an Enclosure	
Making Controller Settings	
Viewing Controller Information	
Buzzer Settings	
SILENCING THE BUZZER	
Managing Physical Drives	
VIEWING PHYSICAL DRIVE INFORMATION	
Making Global Physical Drive Settings	
Managing UPS Units	
VIEWING UPS INFORMATION	
Making UPS Settings	
Managing Initiators	
Adding a Fibre Channel or ISCSI Initiator	
Viewing Initiators	111
Deleting an Initiator	111
Manageing Targets	
Adding a Fibre Channel or ISCSI Target	
VIEWING TARGET	
Deleting an Target	
Network Management	
Making Management IP Settings	
Viewing Management IP Settings	
Making IO Portal Settings	
VIEWING IO PORTAL SETTINGS	
Making Global IP Settings	
Making Trunk Settings	
CREATE IO TRUNK	
VIEWING PORT INFORMATION	
Making Port Settings	
Making Maintenance Mode Settings	
Making Maintenance Mode Port Settings	
Managing Fibre Channel Connections	
Viewing Fibre Channel Node Information	
VIEWING FIBRE CHANNEL PORT INFORMATION	
Making Fibre Channel Port Settings	
Port Setting Information	

VIEWING FIBRE CHANNEL PORT STATISTICS	
VIEWING FIBRE CHANNEL LOGGED-IN DEVICES	
VIEWING FIBRE CHANNEL INITIATORS ON THE FABRIC	
VIEWING FIBRE CHANNEL SFPS	
MANAGING ISCSI CONNECTIONS	
Viewing ISCSI Target Information	
Making ISCSI Target Settings	130
VIEWING A LIST OF ISCSI SESSIONS	
VIEWING ISCSI SESSION INFORMATION	
DELETING AN ISCSI SESSION	131
VIEWING ISCSI ISNS INFORMATION	
MAKING ISCSI ISNS SETTINGS	132
VIEWING A LIST OF ISCSI CHAPS	
Adding ISCSI CHAPs	133
	133
MAKING ISCSI CHAP SETTINGS	134
VIEWING A LIST OF LOGGED-IN DEVICES	134
Using the Event Viewer	135
VIEWING EVENTS	
SAVING EVENTS	
CLEARING EVENTS	
Managing Users	
Viewing User Information	137
Creating a User	137
Making User Settings	138
Changing User Passwords	139
Deleting a User	139
Setting User Event Subscriptions	140
VIEWING SERVICES	141
EMAIL SERVICE	
STOPPING EMAIL SERVICE	
Restarting Email Service	
Making Email Settings	
SLP SERVICE	
STOPPING SLP SERVICE	
Restarting SLP Service	
Making SLP Settings	

Webserver Service	
Stopping Webserver Service	
Restarting Webserver Service	
Making Webserver Settings	
SSH Service	
STOPPING SSH SERVICE	
RESTARTING SSH SERVICE	
Making SSH Settings	
SSH Public Key Management	
SNMP Service	
STOPPING SNMP SERVICE	
RESTARTING SNMP SERVICE	
SNMP SETTINGS	
Performance Monitoring	150
Adding a menu to Favorites page	
Managing Background Activities	152
VIEW CURRENT BACKGROUND ACTIVITIES	152
VIEW SCHEDULED BACKGROUND ACTIVITIES	152
ADD A SCHEDULED BACKGROUND ACTIVITY	153
CHANGE A BACKGROUND ACTIVITY SCHEDULE	154
ENABLE/DISABLE SCHEDULED BACKGROUND ACTIVITY	
DELETE A SCHEDULED BACKGROUND ACTIVITY	155
Media Patrol	156
STARTING, STOPPING, PAUSING AND RESUMING MEDIA PATROL	
REDUNDANCY CHECK	157
STARTING, STOPPING, PAUSING AND RESUMING REDUNDANCY CHECK	157
REBUILD	158
Starting a Rebuild	
BACKGROUND SYNCHRONIZATION	
PDM	
TRANSITION	
RESTORE FACTORY DEFAULT SETTINGS	
Export User Database	
Export Service Report	
EXPORT CONFIGURATION SCRIPT, NAS CONFIGURATION, NAS ACCOUNT	164
Import User Database	
IMPORT CONFIGURATION SCRIPT, NAS CONFIGURATION, NAS ACCOUNT	166
Update Firmware	167

Product Registration	
AUTOMATIC RESTART	
MANAGING WITH THE CLI	
Making a Serial Connection	
Logging Into the CLI	
COMMAND TABLE OF CONTENTS	
TABLE OF SUPPORTED COMMANDS	
Notes and Conventions	
CONTACTING TECHNICAL SUPPORT	
LIMITED WARRANTY	
DISCLAIMER OF OTHER WARRANTIES	
Your Responsibilities	
RETURNING THE PRODUCT FOR REPAIR	

# INTRODUCTION

The Vess R3600 Series consolidates both block and file protocols onto a single hardware platform, simplified storage administration in one unified storage appliance that achieves performance and scalability goals. High availability design with active-active configuration, Vess R3600 Series storage solutions are ideal for use in dataintensive environments such as virtualized, cloud data centers or mid-size to large scale surveillance installations that utilize the Vess A Series Storage Appliance for Video Surveillance.

# **Features**

- Dynamic storage solution optimized for virtualized environments
- Unified FC and iSCSI connections for SAN and NAS in the same storage
- Flexible 1/10G and optional 8/16G FC, with 12G/6G SAS and 6G SATA backward compatible
- Fully tuned RAID expansion for video surveillance applications
- CacheGuard Data Protection & Predictive Data Migration (PDM)
- Scale up to 208 hard disk drives via Vess J3000 series expansion units

# **Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 Models**

Model	Interface / Controller	Controllers	Drives	Power Supplies
Vess R3600iD	4 x 1000BASE-T 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO	2	16	2
Vess R3600iS	4 x 1000BASE-T 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO	1	16	2
Vess R3600tiD	4 x 1000BASE-T 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO 2 x 10G BASE-T	2	16	2
Vess R3600tiS	4 x 1000BASE-T 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO 2 x 10G BASE-T	1	16	2
Vess R3600xiD         1 x 1000BASE-T           2 x 10G SFP+		2	16	2
4 x 1000BASE-T Vess R3600xiS 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO 2 x 10G SFP+		1	16	2
Vess R3604fiD	4 x 1000BASE-T Vess R3604fiD 1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO 4 x 16Gb Fibre Channel		16	2
Vess R3604fiS	4 x 1000BASE-TVess R3604fiS1 x 1000BASE-T Management / IO4 x 16Gb Fibre Channel		16	2
Model	Model Interface / IO Module		Drives	Power Supplies
Vess J3600sSD 2 x 12G SFF-8644 mini-SAS		2	16	2
Vess J3600sS 2 x 12G SFF-8644 mini-SAS		1	16	2

All models listed below are equipped with dual controllers and two power supplies.

# **Specifications**

### Vess R3600 Series models

Form factor	3U 19" rack mount	
Drives supported	Up to 16 3.5" drives	
	6/12 Gb SAS, 6 Gb SATA HDD and SSD	
	<ul> <li>Supports any mix of SAS and SATA drives simultaneously in the same enclosure</li> </ul>	
IO Ports	Four 1G IO plus One 1G Management / IO	
per controller	<ul> <li>One 12G SFF-8644 mini-SAS connector per controller for JBOD expansion.</li> </ul>	
Memory	8GB x 1 per ctrl (up to 64GB)	
Storage	Cascade up to twelve Vess J3600 JBOD expansion units.	
Expansion       Vess J3600 Series supports 16 drives per device.		
Operational		
RAID support	0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, 60	
RAID stripe size	64K, 128K, 256K, 512K, 1MB	
Hot Spare Drives	Global, Dedicated and Revertible option	

Power Supplies	CRPS 550W; Efficiency 80PLUS Certified Redundant Power Supply			
Voltage	AC: 100-240VAC; [	AC: 100-240VAC; DC: 180-320VDC Auto-Ranging		
Current (Maximum)	< 8A@100-240VAC@full load; < 8A@180-320VDC@full load			
Power Conversion Efficiency	>80% @ 110V (>20% load), >80% @ 240V (>20% load)			
<b>Dimensions</b> (Height, Width, Depth)	131mm x 446.7mm	x 507mm (5.2" x 17	.6" x 19.96")	
Weight (killograms)	R3600tiD	R3600xiD	R3600iD	R3604fiD
(w/o drives)	19.8	19.8	19.7	19.9
(w drives)	31.0	31.0	30.9	31.1

Safety & Environment	Description
EMI / RFI Statements	EMC Class A: CE, FCC, VCCI, BSMI, RCM
	Safety: IEEE CB, NTRL
Environmental Standards	RoHS, WEEE
Temperature Range	Operational: 5° to 35°C, Non-Operational: -40° to 60°C
Humidity Range	Operational: 20% to 80% (Non-Condensing) NonOperational: ~ 95% (Non-Condensing)
Acoustic Noise Levels	< 60dB, 25C
Shock	Operational: 5G, 11 ms duration Non-Operational: 30G, 11ms duration
Vibration	Operational: 0.2G, 5 to 500Hz (sine wave) ; 0.41G, 3-10-200- 500Hz (Random) Non-Operational: 1G, 5 to 500Hz (sine wave) ; 2.256G, 5-80- 350-500Hz (Random)

Support & Warranty	Description
Support	<ul> <li>24 hour, 7 days a week, 365 days a year e-mail and phone support (English only)</li> <li>24 hour, 7 days a week, 365 days a year access to PROMISE support site</li> <li>Firmware and compatibility lists</li> </ul>
Warranty	3 year limited warranty

### Vess J3600 JBOD models

Form factor	3U 19" rack mount
Drives supported	<ul> <li>Up to 16 3.5" drives</li> <li>6/12 Gb SAS, 6 Gb SATA HDD and SSD</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Supports any mix of SAS and SATA drives simultaneously in the same enclosure</li> </ul>
IO Ports per IO module	<ul> <li>Two 12G SFF-8644 mini-SAS connector per controller for JBOD expansion.</li> </ul>

Power Supplies	CRPS 550W; Efficiency 80PLUS Certified Redundant Power Supply		
Voltage	AC: 100-240VAC; DC: 180-320VDC Auto-Ranging		
Current (Maximum)	< 8A@100-240VAC@full load; < 8A@180-320VDC@full load		
Power Conversion Efficiency	>80% @ 110V (>20% load), >80% @ 240V (>20% load)		
<b>Dimensions</b> (Height, Width, Depth)	131mm x 446.7mm x 507mm (5.2" x 17.6" x 19.96")		
Weight	Single controller models	Dual controller models	
(w/o drives)	17.72 kg	19.8 kg	
(w drives)	28,92 kg	31 kg	

# Hardware

The following section provides a summary of the front and back panel hardware features of the Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 enclosures.

# **Front View**

Vess R3600 and Vess J3600 enclosures feature handles on each side used to secure the enclosure to an equipment rack.





Front view of Vess J3600



# Back of Vess R3600

The rear of the Vess R3600 Series enclosure provides access to the power supply units, which include the cooling fans, and the system controller(s).

Each controller has an RJ-45 Gigabit Ethernet port used for management, an RS-232 serial management port using an RJ-11 connector, four 1 Gb/s iSCSI ports, one SAS Expansion port for additional drive enclosures, one USB 3.0 port and various LED indicators which are described below.

### Ports on all Vess R3600 Series



Port	Description
1	1000BASE-T IO ports (four ports for iSCSI)
2	USB 3.0
3	RJ-11 Serial management (use DB9-to-RJ-11 data cable)
4	SFF-8644 mini-SAS Expansion (JBOD expansion)
5	1000BASE-T MGMT / IO Network management and IO

### Back view of Vess R3600i



## Back view of Vess R3600ti



### Back view of Vess R3600xi



### Back view of Vess R3604fi



# Back of Vess J3600

The rear of the Vess J3600 Series enclosure provides access to the power supply units, which include the cooling fans, and the IO modules. Each IO module has two SAS Expansion ports, including status LEDs for the SAS ports and the IO module.

### Back view of Vess J3600sD



### Back view of Vess J3600sS



# WARRANTY AND SUPPORT

# WARRANTY

- Three year complete system limited warranty
- Battery Backup Unit has a one year limited warranty
- Optional 2-year extended warranty
- Optional onsite parts replacement program

Promise Technology, Inc. ("Promise") warrants that for three (3) years from the time of the delivery of the

product to the original end user except for one (1) year warranty on the battery backup unit:

a) the product will conform to Promise's specifications;

b) the product will be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service.

This warranty:

a) applies only to products which are new and in cartons on the date of purchase;

- b) is not transferable;
- c) is valid only when accompanied by a copy of the original purchase invoice;
- d) is not valid on spare parts.

This warranty shall not apply to defects resulting from:

a) improper or inadequate maintenance, or unauthorized modification(s), performed by the end user;

b) operation outside the environmental specifications for the product;

c) accident, misuse, negligence, misapplication, abuse, natural or personal disaster, or maintenance by anyone other than a Promise or a Promise authorized service center.

# **HARDWARE INSTALLATION**

This chapter presents basic information on unpacking the Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 enclosures and mounting it in an equipment rack, making the connections for data and management paths and connecting the power. It also describes how to power on the system and what to look for while it is powering up.

The main sections in Hardware Setup include the following:

- Unpacking
- Mounting the Vess enclosure in a rack
- Installing Physical Drives
- Making Management Connections
- Connecting the Power
- Power on

Depending on the details of your order, the Vess R3600 Series or Vess J3600 enclosure might be shipped with hard drives installed, or it might require that you install hard drives. The section "Installing Physical Drives" on page 18 provides instruction for installing hard disks.

# Unpacking

# Packing List

The Vess R3600 Series box contains the following items:

- Vess R3600 Unit
- One Quick Start Guide printed
- Two 1.5m (4.9 ft) Power cord
- Sliding rail assembly for rack mounting
- DB9-to-RJ11 serial data cable

The Vess J3600 box contains the following items:

- Vess J3600 JBOD Storage Enclosure
- One Quick Start Guide printed
- Two 1.5m (4.9 ft) Power cord
- Sliding rail assembly for rack mounting
- SFF-8644 external SAS cable
- DB9-to-RJ11 serial data cable



## Warning

The electronic components within the Vess enclosure are sensitive to damage from Electro-Static Discharge (ESD). Observe appropriate precautions at all times when handling the Vess or its subassemblies.



## Warning

Two persons are needed to safely place the unit onto the rails. DO NOT lift the unit by the handles

# Mounting the Vess enclosure in a rack

This section provides instructions for installing the Vess R3600 Series or Vess J3600 JBOD enclosure

into a rack. Note that for simplicity, all Vess models enclosures are referred to as Vess or Vess unit.



## Caution

To lighten the enclosure, remove the power supplies, and remove all hard drive carriers. Replace the power supplies and drive carriers after the unit is mounted in your rack.



## Cautions

- Do not populate any unit with hard drives until it has been securely installed in the rack.
- At least two persons are required to safely lift, place, and attach the unit into a rack system.
- Do not lift or move the unit by the handles, power supplies or the controller units. Hold the system itself.
- Do not install the unit into a rack without rails to support the system.
- Only a qualified technician who is familiar with the installation procedure should mount and install the unit.
- Mount the rails to the rack using the appropriate screws and nuts, fully tightened, at each end of the rail.
- Do not load the rails unless they are installed with screws as instructed.
- The rails available for the PROMISE Vess unit are designed to safely support that PROMISE Vess unit when properly installed. Additional loading on the rails is at the customer's risk.
- PROMISE Technology, Inc. cannot guarantee that the mounting rails will support your PROMISE Vess unit unless you install them as instructed.

To install the Vess into a rack with the supplied mounting rails:

1. Check the fit of the mounting rails in your rack system.



Guide pins on rails align with holes in the rack post

- 2. Adjust the length of the mounting rails as needed.
  - The rear rail slides inside the front rail. The rails are composed of two sliding sections and do not require adjusting screws.
  - The front-left and front-right mounting rail ends are labeled.
  - Be sure the front rail support is on the bottom facing inward.
  - All rail ends, front and rear, attach at the outside of the rack posts.
  - The guide pins at the rail ends align with the holes in the rack posts.
  - Use the attaching screws and nuts from your rack system. Tighten the screws and nuts according to instructions for your rack system.

Rail ends attach to the outside of each post



- 3. Place the Vess onto the rails.
  - At least two persons are required to safely lift the system.
  - Lift the Vess itself. Do not lift the system by its brackets.



Placing the Vess system onto the rack rails


- 4. Secure the enclosure to the rack.
  - Use screws and nuts to lock the unit in to place in the rack.

### Secure to rack



### System installed in rack



## **Installing Physical Drives**

The Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 JBOD subsystems support:

- SAS hard disks
- SATA hard disks (SATA drives require use of an adapter)

For a list of supported physical drives, download the latest compatibility list from the PROMISE

http://www.promise.com/support/.

## **Number of Drives Required**

The table below shows the number of drives required for each RAID level

Level	Number of Drives	Level	Number of Drives
RAID 0	1 or more	RAID 6	4 to 32
RAID 1	2 only	RAID 10	4 or more*
RAID 5	3 to 32	RAID 50	6 or more
		RAID 60	8 or more

\*Must be an even number of drives.



### Caution

The Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 JBOD support disk drive hot-swapping. To avoid hand contact with an electrical hazard, do not remove more than one drive carrier a time.

## **Drive Slot Numbering**

You can install any suitable disk drive into any slot in the enclosure. The diagrams below shows how drive slots are numbered on the Vess R3600 Series and Vess J3600 models. Slot numbering is reflected in the WebPAM PROe and CLI user interfaces.

Be sure to install all of the drive carriers into the Vess R3600 and Vess J3600 enclosure to ensure proper airflow, even if you do not populate all the carriers with physical drives.

					PROMISE
0		2	3	4	.0
	5	6	7	8	
	9	10	11	12	
	13	14	15	16	VE55 R3600

#### Drive slot numbering on Vess R3600 (Vess J3600 numbering is identical)

## **Installing Your Drives**

The drive carrier accommodates 3.5-inch drives.

The Vess R3600 and Vess J3600 do support use of SATA drives (SATA drives require use of an adapter), but

SAS drives are recommended.



### Cautions

Swing open the drive carrier handle before you insert the drive carrier into the enclosure.

To avoid hand contact with an electrical hazard, remove only one drive carrier a time.



### Important

SATA drives require a SAS-to-SATA adapter, available from PROMISE Technology at http://www.promise.com/

SAS drives do not require adapters.

- 1. Press the drive carrier release button.
- 2. Grasp the front and gently pull the empty drive carrier out of the enclosure.

### Drive carrier front view



Disk carrier release button

- 3. If you are installing SATA drives, attach a SAS-to-SATA adapter onto the power and IO connectors of each drive.
- 4. Carefully lay the drive into the carrier with the power and IO connectors facing away from the carrier handle.
- 5. Position the drive in the carrier so the mounting holes line up.
  - 2.5-inch drive mounting screws go through the bottom of the carrier.
  - SAS-to-SATA adapter mounting screws go through the bottom of the carrier.
  - 3.5-inch drive mounting screws go through the sides of the carrier.
- 6. Insert the screws through the proper holes in the carrier and into the drive or adapter.
  - Use the screws supplied with the shipment or the SAS-to-SATA adapter.
  - Install four screws per drive.
  - Install two screws per adapter.
  - Snug each screw. Be careful not to over tighten.
- 7. With the drive carrier handle in open position, gently slide the drive carrier into the enclosure.



### Important

Press the release button to push the drive carrier into position.

Proper drive installation ensures adequate grounding and minimizes vibration. Always attach the drive to the carrier with four screws.

## **Making Management Connections**

There are two methods to establish a management connection, Network and Serial connection. For the initial setup, it is necessary to establish the network management connection; use the MGMT/IO port on both controllers for system management. The Vess R3600 Series also features a Serial management port for system management using a terminal emulation program and the Vess R3600 Command Line Interface (CLI). The hardware connections for both methods are described in this section.



Vess R3600 Series controller Management and IO ports

Port	Description
1	1000BASE-T IO ports (four ports for iSCSI)
2	USB 3.0
3	RJ-11 Serial management (use DB9-to-RJ-11 data cable)
4	SFF-8644 mini-SAS Expansion (JBOD expansion)
5	1000BASE-T MGMT / IO Network management and IO



### Note

The Vess J3600 is managed and controlled through the head unit. The Vess J3600 can be used with the Vess R3600, Vess A7000 and Vess A6000 series.

## **Serial management connection**

Serial communication enables any computer that has an available serial port and terminal emulation application to access the Vess Command Line Interface (CLI) to set up a network connection. The Vess package includes one RJ11-to-DB9 serial data cable for each controller.

To set up a serial cable connection:

- 1. Attach the RJ-11 end of the serial data cable to the RJ-11 serial connector on one of the RAID controllers.
- 2. Attach the DB9 end of the serial data cable to a serial port on the host PC or server.

## **Network management connection**

Each Vess R3600 Series controller has a 1000BASE-T Ethernet port labeled MGMT/IO used for management via network connection.

To establish the management path network connection:

- 1. Attach one end of an Ethernet cable to the network connector or standard NIC in the Host PC, attach the other end of the Ethernet cable to a port on a standard network switch.
- 2. Attach one end of an Ethernet cable to the same network switch and attach the other end to the MGMT/IO port on controller 1.
- 3. If the subsystem is dual controller, connect one end of an Ethernet cable to the same network switch and attach the other end to the MGMT/IO port on controller 2.

#### Vess R3600i management path connections

Vess R3600i



### Note

The RJ-45 network management ports on a Vess R3600 Series subsystem share the same Virtual IP address. The default Virtual IP address, 10.0.0.1, applies to the RJ-45 network port (MGMT/IO) on both controllers. If you change the Virtual IP address, the change applies to both network management ports.

## **Making Data Connections**

Follow the instructions below for the type of controller used on your Vess R3600 subsystem.

## **iSCSI** Options

The Vess R3600 Series includes various options for iSCSI networks. All Vess R3600 controllers, including the Vess R3604fi, include four 1000BASE-T ports. The iSCSI data options for each of the available controllers are as follows:

- · Vess R3600i and Vess R3604fi: four 1000BASE-T ports
- · Vess R3600ti: four 1000BASE-T plus two 10G BASE-T ports
- · Vess R3600xi: four 1000BASE-T plus two 10G SFP+ ports

## **1000 BASE-T iSCSI SAN connections**

All Vess R3600 models include four 1GbE IO ports. For the 1000BASE-T iSCSI storage network:

Connect suitable network cables (Cat-5e or Cat-6 Ethernet cable) between the one or both 1GbE IO ports on one or both controllers to the 1000BASE-T network switch used for the iSCSI SAN. If you have multiple Vess R3600 subsystems, repeat the cabling setup procedure as required.

## **10G BASE-T iSCSI SAN connections**

For the 10G BASE-T iSCSI storage network:

Connect suitable network cables (Cat-6 or Cat-7 Ethernet cable) between the one or both 10G ports on one or both controllers to the 10G network switch used for the iSCSI SAN. If you have multiple Vess R3600ti subsystems, repeat the cabling setup procedure as required.

### Vess R3600ti 10G iSCSI connections



## SFP+ Fiber Optic iSCSI

The Fiber Optic data network for the Vess R3600xi controller requires the following items:

- An SFP+ connection in each host PC or server
- An SFP+ transceiver for every SFP+ port in the connection (subsystem, switch, HBA)
- An SFP+ switch (not required for direct attached connection)
- Fiber Optic cabling (LC/LC 62.5/125µm MMF)

#### Vess R3600xi SFP+ iSCSI connections

Server





### Important

For a list of supported HBAs, switches, and SFP transceivers, download the latest compatibility list from PROMISE support: http://www.promise.com/support

## SFP+ Fiber Optic connections

For the Fiber Optic storage network:

- Connect Fibre Optic cables between the Fibre Optic ports on the server and the Fibre Optic ports on the SFP+ switch.
- Connect Fiber Optic cables between the Fiber Optic port on the Vess R3600xi controller and a Fiber Optic port on a SFP+ switch.

If you have multiple Vess R3600xi subsystems, host PCs or servers, repeat the steps as required.

For *Direct Attached* SFP+ Fiber Optic storage:

- 1. Connect Fiber Optic cable to the Fiber Optic port on the host PC or server.
- Connect the other end of the Fiber Optic cables to the SFP+ Fiber Optic port on the Vess R3600xi controller.

## Fibre Channel SAN data path

The Vess R3604fi features 16Gb Fibre Channel. The Fibre Channel data network requires the following items:

- A Fibre Channel connection in each host PC or server
- An SFP transceiver for every SFP (Fibre Channel) port in the connection (subsystem, switch, HBA), 16Gb

#### SFP transceivers are recommended for best performance.

- A Fiber Channel switch (not required for direct attached connection)
- Fiber Optic cabling

#### Vess R3604fi Fiber Channel SAN data connections



## Fibre Channel SAN connections

For the 16Gb Fibre Channel storage area network (SAN):

- 1. For servers equipped with Fibre Channel HBA cards, connect Fiber Optic cables between the Fibre Channel ports in both host PCs or servers and the ports on a Fibre Channel network switch.
- Connect Fiber Optic cables between the Fibre Channel port on the Vess R3604fi controllers and a Fibre Channel port on a Fibre Channel switch or Fibre Channel capable switch (SFP).
   If you have multiple Vess R3604fi subsystems, host PCs or servers, repeat the steps as required.

### Fibre Channel DAS connections

For 16Gb Fibre Channel direct attached storage (DAS):

- For each attached server or host PC, connect Fiber Optic cable to the Fibre Channel port on the host PC or server; 16Gb SFP transceivers are recommended for best performance.
- 2. Connect the other end of the Fiber Optic cable to a 16Gb Fibre Channel port on one of the Vess R3600 controllers.

#### Vess R3604fi DAS connection



### Fibre Channel data cable directly attached to server

## Fiber Channel DAS data path

The 16Gb Fibre Channel data connection for the Vess R3604fi controllers requires the following items:

- A Fibre Channel connection in each host PC or server.
- An Fibre Channel transceiver for each connected port on the subsystem.
- Fiber Optic cabling (LC/LC 62.5/125µm MMF)

## **Vess R3600 with JBOD Expansion**

JBOD expansion requires one SFF-8644 to SFF-8644 external SAS cable for each JBOD unit. The single controller Vess J3600sS is intended for use with the single controller Vess R3600 models, as well as the Vess A6000 Series and Vess A7000 Series models. Up to 12 Vess J3600sS unit can be used with each Vess R3600; up to 5 Vess J3600sS can be used with each Vess A6000 or Vess A7000 unit. The dual controller Vess J3600sSD can be used with dual controller Vess R3600 models.

For a cascading SAS connection to Vess R3600 models, use SFF-8644 external SAS cables to perform these tasks:

To add Vess J3600 Series units:

- Connect the SAS expansion port on the left controller of the RAID subsystem to the SAS port on the left I/O module of the first Vess J3600 unit.
- Connect the SAS expansion port on the right controller of the RAID subsystem to the SAS data port on the right I/O module of the first Vess J3600 unit.
- 3. Connect any remaining Vess J3600 units in the same manner.

Keep in mind the following points:

- Keep your data paths organized to ensure redundancy.
- JBOD expansion supports up to twelve Vess J3600 units.



### Important

**Power on the JBOD units first**, when you are ready to power on the enclosures.

Read the Vess J3600 Series Product Manual for information on the Vess J3600 Series enclosures.

## Duel Controller Expansion with Vess R3600

To setup a redundant JBOD cascading connection:

- Use the SFF-8644 external SAS cable supplied with the Vess J3600sSD to connect the SAS port in left controller of the Vess R3600sD to a SAS port 1 of left controller on the uppermost Vess J3600sSD in the rack.
- Connect SAS Port 2 of the left controller on the same Vess J3600sSD to the SAS Port 1 of the left controller on the next Vess J3600sSD in the stack.
- In the same manner, connect the SAS ports of the right controllers on the Vess R3600sD to the right controllers of the Vess J3600sSD in the stack.
- 4. Connect the remaining Vess J3600sSD enclosures in the same manner.



### Vess R3600 with Vess J3600sSD JBOD expansion

## Single Controller Expansion with Vess R3600

- Connect the SFF-8644 SAS port in the host Vess R3600 system to SAS Port 1 on the uppermost Vess J3600sS unit in the rack.
- Connect SAS Port 2 on the same Vess J3600sS to the SAS Port 1 on the next Vess J3600sS in the stack.
- 3. Connect the remaining Vess J3600sS enclosures in the same manner.

### Vess R3600 with Vess J3600sSD JBOD expansion



### Note



Please check the Vess J3600 Quick Start Guide for more setup options using the Vess A7000 and Vess A6000 Series.

## **Connecting the Power**

Vess R3600 and Vess J3600 enclosures are equipped with two power supply units (PSU) for each enclosure; each PSU has its own ON/OFF switch. Connect both power supplies to a suitable power source.

## **Power on**

With the power supplies connected, the system(s) can now be powered on. The power supply modules include the cooling fans that cool the enclosure. Both power supplies should be powered up when starting the system. Make sure the power switch on each power supply is in the On position.

If you are using Vess J3600 JBOD enclosures, power these units on BEFORE powering on the Vess R3600 enclosure. To power on the Vess J3600, toggle the power switch on each PSU to the ON position. See "Vess R3600 Power Supply Components" on page 39 for PSU description. To power on the Vess R3600 subsystem, press the Power button on the front left bracket facing (see illustration below). Observe the LEDs on the right front bracket facing.



### Important

If you are using the Vess J3600 JBOD enclosure, power the JBODs on first.

Power button on front left of Vess R3600

Power button	$\bigcirc$		

## **Front LED Behavior**

When boot-up is finished and the Vess R3600 subsystem is functioning normally:

- Power, FRU and Logical Drive LEDs display Green continuously
- Controller Activity LED flashes Green when there is controller activity.
- System Heartbeat LED blinks Green once per second for five seconds, then goes dark for ten secondes, then repeats the same pattern.

Also on the front panel, there are two LEDs on each drive carrier. These report the presence of power and a physical drive, and the current condition of the drive. See table on next page for complete description of LEDs on front right of Vess R3600.



### LED indicators on front right of Vess R3600 enclosure

Vess R3600 front right LED Behavior After Boot Up

LED	Status	Description
Bower	Off	System power off
Fower	Blue	System power on
	Off	System power off
	Green	OK, healthy
Global Enclosure Status	Amber	Malfunction
	Red	Critical/Failure (Check the PSU and controller LEDs on the back of the Vess enclosure).
Clobal PAID Statua	Off	System power off
	Green	Normal
Giobal RAID Status	Amber	Critical
	Red	Offline
	Off	Controller not present
Controller 1 Activity	Steady Blue	Any FC or Network port is linked with no I/O activity
	Blinking Blue	I/O running
	Off	Controller not present
Controller 2 Activity	Steady Blue	Any FC or Network port is linked with no I/O activity
	Blinking Blue	I/O running
	Off	System power off
Heartbeat	Blinking Blue	Blinks once per two second interval for dual controller enclosure; blinks once per four second interval for single controller enclosure

### LED indicators on front right of Vess J3600 enclosure



		LED name	Status	Description
	1	Power	OFF	System Power Off
	-		Blue	System Power On
			Off	System Power Off
	2	Global	Green	OK/Healthy
	2	Status	Amber	Malfunction
			Red	Critical
			Off	No I/O
	3	I/O module 1 activity	Steady Blue	No I/O and SAS expansion port is linked
			Blink Blue	I/O Running
			Off	No I/O
	4	I/O module 2 activity	Steady Blue	No I/O and SAS expansion port is linked
			Blink Blue	I/O Running
	5		Off	System Power Off
		Heartbeat	Blink Blue	IOM FW works.( Dual IOM blink every 2 sec, single IOM blink every 4 sec )

### Disk Carrier LEDs



The Vess spins up hard disk drives sequentially to minimize power draw during start-up. After a few moments:

- The Power/Activity LED displays blue when a physical drive is present.
- The Drive Status LED displays green when the physical drive is configured as a member of a disk array or

as a spare. When the physical drive is unconfigured, the LED is dark.

Steady means the LED is on.

Blinking means a regular on/off pattern.

Flashing means intermittent and irregular on/off pattern.

#### Drive Status LED Behavior After Boot Up

State	Power/Activity	Drive Status
Dark	No drive in carrier	Drive is not configured
Steady Blue	Drive in carrier	—
Flashing Blue	Activity on drive	—
Steady Green	_	Drive is configured
Blinking Green	_	Locator feature
Amber	_	Drive is rebuilding
Red	_	Drive error of failure

\* Configured means the physical drive either belongs to an array or it is assigned as a spare drive.

## Vess R3600 Power Supply Components

The LEDs on the rear panel of the Vess R3600 include a single status LED on each power supply. These PSU status LED will light green to indicate normal operation. A red LED indicates a problem or unit failure. See the table below for more detailed PSU LED information.

### Status LED on Vess R3600 Power Supply



PSU Status LED

LED	Status	Description	
	Off	Not detected	
DSLI Statua I ED	On (Steady Green)	Normal	
FSU Status LED	Flashing Green	Power off and in standby mode	
	Red	Failed	
	Off	Not detected	
Power Switch LED	Green	Normal	
	Red	Failed	
	Off	Not detected	
Fan Status LED	Green	Normal	
		Failed	

## **Controller LEDs**

When boot-up is finished and the Vess R3600 subsystem is functioning normally:

- Controller status LEDs display green continuously.
- Ethernet LEDs display green or flash depending on your network connection.
- The SAS Expansion LEDs display green or flash during port activity.



### Vess R3600 Controller LEDs

Please refer to table on next page for LED description.

## Controller LED Behavior

The table below describes behavior of the LED indicators on the Vess R3600 Series controller.

Item #	LED	Description
1	Port Speed (1G I/O and Management ports)	Flashing amber indicates 100 Mb/s, flashing green indicates 1 Gb/s. Dark can mean 10 Mb/s or no link (check Link/Activity LED).
2	Link/Activity (1G I/O and Management ports)	Solid green light indicates a link. Flashing green light indicates activity.
3	SAS Expansion	This lights green when connected, and flash green when there is activity.
4	BBU	This lights steady green when the battery status is healthy (normal). Red indicates the battery has failed. A steady amber light indicates there is not enough reserve power in the battery to backup cache memory if the power fails.
5	Dirty Cache	Lights steady amber if cache is dirty, meaning that the controller memory cache contains data, otherwise this is dark. This will blink green when using the controller locator feature.
6	Controller Status	This displays the current operational status of the controller. A steady (unblinking) green light indicates the controller is operational. This will blink green when using the controller locator feature. A blinking amber light indicates a problem. Steady red light indicates controller failure. A flashing red light means the controller is in Maintenance Mode (offline while in Maintenance Mode).

Table below refers to Controller LED illustration on previous page

## 10G Port LED Behavior on Vess R3600xi and Vess R3600ti

Model	LED/Description
Vess R3600xi	Two 10 Gb/s SFP+ iSCSI/NAS ports per controller. Two LEDs (Link/Act and Speed) are located above each port. The left LED lights green when connected, flashes green when there is activity on the port and remains dark no connection has been established. The LED on the right of each port indicates connection speed, green indicates 10 Gb/s, amber indicates 1 Gb/s.
Vess R3600ti	Two 10Gb/s BaseT iSCSI/NAS ports per controller. Two LEDs (Link/Act and Speed) are located above each port. The left LED lights green when connected, flashes green when there is activity on the port and remains dark no connection has been established. The LED on the right of each port indicates connection speed, green indicates 10 Gb/s, amber indicates 1 Gb/s.

LED indicators for Fibre Channel ports on Vess R3604fi



### Fiber Channel Port LED behavior

LEDs	Power on (Before Firmware Initialization)	Power on (After Firmware Initialization)	Firmware Fault	4 Gbps Link Up/ ACT	8 Gbps Link Up/ ACT	16 Gbps Link Up/ ACT
Green LED (16 Gbps)				Off	Off	On/Flash when active
Green LED (8 Gbps)	On	Flash	Flash in sequence	Off	On/Flash when active	Off
Green LED (4 Gbps)				On/Flash when active	Off	Off

All Fibre Channel port LED indicators will be dark when the system is powered off. If all three indicators for a port flash simultaneously, then there is no SFP transceiver installed, or the wrong type of transceiver is installed, or the port is not connected.

### Vess J3600 Controller LEDs



The table below describes behavior of the LED indicators on the Vess J3600 controller.

LED name	Status	Description
	Off	Off
IOM status LED	Green	Ready
	Red	FW is not Ready
	Off	Link down
Expansion Port Link	On (Steady Green)	Link up
Sidius LED	Blinking Green	Activity

## **Resetting the Default Password**

This feature resets the Administrator's password to the default factory setting, password. Use this feature when you have forgotten Administrator's password or a new Administrator has been appointed.

The reset applies to the Administrator's login for WebPAM PROe and the CLI. No other user passwords are affected.

To reset the Administrator's default password:

- 1. Verify that the Vess has fully booted.
- 2. For one of the RAID controllers, locate the password reset switch. See illustration below.
- 3. Insert a pin or a straightened paper clip into the opening and momentarily depress password reset switch.

You only need to press the reset switch on one RAID controller.

The next time the Administrator logs in, use the default password: password.



### Important

PROMISE recommends that you change the Administrator's default password immediately after reset.

# WEBPAM PROE - SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

This chapter describes system configuration using WebPAM PROe. The information is presented in approximately the same order the links for the menus appear in the WebPAM PROe user interface. The menus, submenus and other configuration information includes the following:

- Logging into WebPAM PROe
- Viewing the Storage Network
- Dashboard
- Creating a Shared Storage Pool
- Creating a Volume
- Creating a NAS Share
- Management User
- Device
- Managing Initiators
- Managing iSCSI Connections
- Using the Event Viewer
- Managing Users
- Managing Background Activities

## LOGGING INTO WEBPAM PROE

- 1. Launch your browser.
- In the browser address field, type in the virtual management port IP address of the Vess R3600 subsystem.

Use the IP address you set in the CLI.

Note that WebPAM PROe requires a secure HTTP connection (i.e. https://). For example, if your

Vess R3600 has an IP address: 10.0.0.1 your entry looks like this: https://10.0.0.1

- 3. When the login screen appears:
  - Type administrator in the User Name field.
  - Type **password** in the Password field.
  - Click the Login button.

The User Name and Password are case sensitive.

4. Optional. Choose a display language from the drop-down menu.

WebPAM PROe displays in English and Simplified Chinese.

5. Click the **Login** button.

After login, the WebPAM PROe main menu appears.

## **Choosing the Display Language**

WebPAM PROe displays in multiple languages. You choose the display language when you log in.

If you are already logged in and you want to change the display language:

1. Click **Logout** at the top right corner of the screen.

The Login screen appears.

2. Click the Language drop-down menu and highlight the language you prefer.



### Login language selection menu

- 3. Reenter your user name and password.
- 4. Click the **Login** button.

WebPAM PROe opens in the language you chose.

## **Perusing the Interface**

The WebPAM PROe interface consists of a header and four tabs, each with specific functions.

Header

Top right corner of the window:

- Event Notification
- Save Service Report Saves a detailed report to your Host PC
- Name of logged-in user
- Logout Exits WebPAM PROe

Use the pulldown menu (small telephone icon) to see these links:

- Get Help Accesses the Help Welcome screen
- About Information about WebPAM PROe
- Contact Us Technical support contact information
- Discovery tab (located in bottom left corner of WebPAM PROe window)
  - Displays other PROMISE RAID systems on your network
  - Enables direct login to other PROMISE RAID systems

The main information and configuration menus are as follows:

- Dashboard tab
  - Subsystem Health quick summary
  - Capacity Utilization summary
  - Performance graphic summary
- Pool tab
  - Create New Pool button (Setup Wizard)
  - Pool List (including Extend or Delete existing pool)
  - Cache (SSD cache configuration)
  - Spare Drive (including create or delete spare drive)
- Volume tab
  - Create New Volume button (Setup Wizard)
  - Volume List (including Delete, Export, and Un-export)
  - LUN Mapping & Masking
  - Periodic Snapshot

List continues on next page

- NAS Share tab
  - Create New NAS Share
  - NAS Share List
  - Protocol
  - Periodic Snapshot
- NAS Account tab
  - NAS User (Create, delete, modify users)
  - NAS Group
  - Domain
- Device tab
  - Device Overview (Device status and information summary, NTP settings, Date and time setting, Subsystem restart and shutdown)
  - Device View (Front View, Back View, Topology)
  - Component List (Enclosure, Controller, Battery, Buzzer, summary and configuration)
  - Physical Drive (Physical drive information summary, Physical drive settings)
  - UPS (summary and configuration)
  - Initiator (summary, add or delete initiator)
  - Target (summary, add or delete target)
  - Network Management (summary and configuration for Port, Trunk, Portal and Global setting)
  - FC Management (Information and configuration for FC including: Node, Port, Statistics, Logged in initiator, Logged in target, Devices on fabric, SFP)
  - iSCSI Management (Information and configuration for iSCSI including: Target, Session, iSNS, Chap, Logged in devices)
- Administration tab
  - Events
  - Management User
  - Service
  - Performance Monitor
  - Image Version
  - License
  - Firmware Update
  - Background Activity
  - Restore Factory Default
  - Import/Export
  - Product Registration
  - Setup Wizard

	4	🤨 📩 😥 - administrator 🕣
≡	Subsystem Health @	
Dashboard		
📟 Pool	OK	
SVolume		
D NAS Share		
III NAS Account	Capacity Utilization	
E Device		
Administration	U.33 % Normal 42.95 GB / 8.12 TB	
	Volumes: 65.54 KB  Meta: 42.95 GB  Free: 8.08 TB	
	Performance	
	Bandwidth(MB/s) Bandwidth IOPS	IOPS(K)
	0.8	0.8
	0.6	0.6
	0.4	0.4
	0.2	0.2
	0 14:15 14:20 14:25 14:30 14:35	14:40 0
Q Discovery	Volume was added successfully.	×

Web PAM PROe Main menu/Dashboard

## Logging out of WebPAM PROe

There are two ways to log out of WebPAM PROe:

- Close your browser window
- Click the Logout icon in the upper right corner of the GUI

Clicking Logout brings you back to the Login Screen.

After logging out, you must enter your user name and password in order to log in again.

## License

Some advanced features such as the PerfectCloud (R3000 SR1.0, D5000 SR1.3), PerfectLock (R3000 SR1.0, D5000 SR1.3) and PerfectData features require a license to use. Please contact Promise Sales, channel partner, distributor to purchase perpetual license or acquire a trial license (free of charge for 60 days) for further evaluation.

To install acquired license, click on **Administration**, then the License menu link. Click on the **Choose File** button and locate the license file (format for license is .dat).

Click on **Upload** to begin importation of the license file. The Confirmation dialog menu appears, to continue importing the license file, you must confirm that you want to install the file by typing "Confirm" and clicking on the **Confirm** button. When the license is installed, you can go to the License menu to view the status of the license.

Please note the licensed services are not guaranteed to work normally when trial license or extended trial licensed expired. The delete operation is allowed, create operation is not.

To continue using the advanced features after the trial period, you can upgrade to a perpetual license. For more information on perpetual license and features included, please contact Promise Sales, channel partner or distributor.

License menu										
					🎾 📩 🔯 administrator 🕣					
=	Administration	希 Home / Administration / License								
🙆 Dashboard	Event	License <sup>®</sup>								
Pool	Management User	Display information about current license, import a TRIAL or a Perpetual license to activate related features.								
S Volume	A Service									
	💷 Performance Monitor 🧹									
	Image Version	Туре:	TRIAL	Expiration Date:	Remaining 60 Day(s)					
III NAS Account	Icense	PerfectData:	Supported (Triel)							
Device	🖉 Firmware Update	Contain Features:	Volume Snapshot/Clone, NAS Share							
F Administration	Background Activity	Import New License								
	Restore Factory Def	* New License File:								
	© Import/Export <									
	Product Registration		Upload Next							
	E Setup Wizard									

### License menu

## VIEWING THE STORAGE NETWORK

To view the other subsystems on your Storage Network, click the **Discovery** button at the left bottom edge of the WebPAM PROe window.

DISCOTO	y mena m								
							۵.	🛃 💽 - admi	nistrator Đ
≡	Pool		骨 Home /	Pool / Pool L	st				
Dashboard	Create New P	ool	Pool I	_ist <sup>⑦</sup>					
Pool	Overview	~	Display a su	immary of all po	ols, delete or extend a sp	ecific pool, filter pool by pool name.			
S Volume	Pool List		Delete	Extend Poo	I Q				
NAS Share	Cache		D ID	Name St	atus Capacity		RAID Level	Affinity	
Ell NAS Account	Spare Drive		0	pool1		Free: 13.88 TB/Total: 13.88 TB	RAID5	Controller 2	۰.
	pool1		1	pool2		Free:3.57 TB/Total:3.57 TB	RAID6	Controller 2	<b>0</b> -
e	pool2								
Q Discovery	Discovery <sup>(2)</sup> Filter by VT17=VTrak VT19=VTrak UT35=VTrak EUT_script=VTrak =VTrak =VTrak =Vtrak =Vess RAID	× Refresh D5800 D5800 D5805 D5805 E56007 E6307 R26006 1830s+ D5805	)						

#### Discovery menu in Main menu

## Logging onto a Subsystem

To log onto a subsystem in the list, click on the IP address of that subsystem.



### Caution

The new subsystem displays in the same browser tab. Click your browser's back button to return to the original subsystem.
# Dashboard

The Dashboard presents a quick system status overview, including graphs for storage capacity utilization, I/O performance and network bandwidth used.

		🎾 📩 💽 - administrator 🕣
≡	Subsystem Health	
Dashboard		
📾 Pool	- OK	
SVolume		
D NAS Share		
III NAS Account	Capacity Utilization	
🗮 Device	Used: / Total:	
<i>▶</i> Administration	20.58% Normal 2.38 TB / 11.54 TB • Volumes: 2.37 TB • Free: 9.17 TB Performance 3andwidth(VMB/s) 0.6 0.6 0.4 0.2 0.00 09:05 09:10 09:15 09:20	IOPS(K) 1 08 09:25
Q Discovery		

#### **Capacity Utilization**

A graph and numerical list of total available storage capacity, used capacity, size of existing volumes, storage used for snapshots, and free capacity.

#### Performance

A graphic summary of Bandwidth in MB/s and I/Os per second

Dashbo	ard with new events	Click here to Events notion	o view ces	Click here to generate a service report
			🕫 🛃 🕞 -	administrator 🛃
≡	Subsystem Health			
Dashboard				
📾 Pool		oK		
Se Volume			·	
D NAS Share				
III NAS Account	Capacity Utilization			۲
E Device				Event Notification
F Administration	20.30 % Normal 2.38 TB / 11.54 TB		Expo 2017-	rt event log successfully. 05-16 10:21:50 from Ctrl 2
				See all events

## **Generating a Service Report**

A Service Report is a detailed report covering the configuration and status of all components in your RAID system. A support technician or field engineer might request a service report for the purpose of diagnosis and troubleshooting.

To save a Service Report file:

 Click the Generate Service Report in the Header (very top of the web interface, next to the Events/Alarm icon. It looks like a 'download' icon.).

Information for the report is gathered and compiled. This action takes up to a few minutes, depending on the report size of your RAID system

2. In the **Save File** dialog, click the **Save** button.

The report saves to your Host PC as a compressed HTML file.

- 3. Double-click the downloaded file to decompress it.
- 4. Double-click the report to open it in your default browser.

# **CREATING A SHARED STORAGE POOL**

The first step for provisioning storage capacity to client systems is create a storage pool. The storage pool is a storage resource consisting of a number of hard disks in a RAID configuration. Once created, a storage pool can be used for NAS sharing (see "Creating a NAS Share" on page 68) or create volumes for a SAN setup (see "Creating a Volume" on page 60). Note that the Vess R3600 Series supports using NAS and SAN simultaneously. You can even allocate a portion of a disk pool for NAS Share, and another portion for SAN volumes.

After logging in, the Dashboard appears. Since the device is not yet configured, there will be little information in the Dashboard. The Dashboard is described in a later section once there is meaningful information to present.

To begin setting up the pool, you can click on the link in the middle of the menu, *Storage is not configured*. *Click here to create one*; or, click on the **Pool** menu icon in the left panel, then click the **Create Pool** button.

#### Dashboard

		🎓 🛇 🕶 administrator 🔁
=	Subsystem Health	
🚯 Dashboard		
Pool	ок	
S Volume		
D NAS Share		
BI NAS Account	Capacity Utilization	
E Device		
& Administration	Storage is not configured. Click here to create one	
	Performance	
	andvidth()/(8/s) Bandwidth IOPS	1096(6)
Q Discovery		

Create New Pool

≡	Pool	希 Home / Pool / Pool List
🚯 Dashboard	Create New Pool	Pool List <sup>®</sup>
Pool	⊕ Overview	Display a summary of all pools, delete or extend a specific pool, filter pool by pool name.
Solume	Pool List	Delete Extend Pool Q
D NAS Share	Cache	ID Name Status Capacity     RAID Level Affinity
III NAS Account	Spare Drive	□ 0 Pool0 ♥ RAID5 Controller
E Device	Pool01	

In the Create New Pool menu, click to select the available hard disks you want to be in the pool, the selected disks become darker in color to indicate selection. Type a name used for the pool, then choose the remaining parameters:

• **Type** (default = Advanced)

*Advanced* - Allows use of advanced features such as Snapshot, Clone, Replicate, Migrate. *Standard* - Cannot use advanced management features.

- *Media Type* (HDD or SSD)
- **RAID Level** (RAID0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60)
- Stripe Size (64 KB, 128 KB, 256 KB, 512 KB, and 1 MB)
- Sector Size (512 B, 1 KB, 2 KB, and 4 KB)
- Preferred Controller



#### Important

Once the pool is created, these parameters cannot be edited or changed.

#### Choose drives for new pool

Go Back Create New Create new pool with specific physical of	✓ Pool <sup>®</sup> drives, pool name and other settings.	
Name:	Pool01	
Type:	Advanced Standard	
Media Type:	Hard Disk Drive	
Selected Physical Drives:	1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14	
	Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay	
RAID Level:	RAID5 Y	
Stripe Size:	64 KB 🔻	
Sector Size:	512 Bytes 🔻	
Preferred Controller:	Controller 1 Controller 2	
	Submit Cancel	

Click on the **Submit** button to create the pool.

### Pool List

Storage pools are listed in the Pool List after creation. Use this menu to delete or extend a pool. To view more detail, click on the gear icon for the pool and select the *Detail* option. Note that, except of the pool name and preferred controller, pool parameters cannot be edited once it has been created.

To extend a pool, select it in the list and click on the **Extend** button. The Extend menu appears. If you want to add JBOD units, the Extend Pool procedure is used to add JBODs.

To delete a pool, select it and click the **Delete** button. You will need to confirm that you want to delete the pool in a pop-up menu. Type "confirm" and click the Confirm button to remove the pool. The drives in that pool revert to unassigned available status.

#### View current shared pool configuration

=	Pool	r Home / Pool / Pool List
🙆 Dashboard	Create New Pool	Pool List®
🔤 Pool	Overview	Display a summary of all pools, delete or extend a specific pool, filter pool by pool name.
S Volume	Pool List	Delete Extend Pool Q
D NAS Share	Cache	ID Name Status Capacity     RAID Level Affinity
NAS Account	Spare Drive	O Pool0 ♥     Free:51.95 TB/Total:51.95 TB 1
E Device	E Pool01	

## **Extending a Storage Pool with JBOD**

A storage pool can be extended if there are physical disks available in the original enclosure, or in a Vess J3600 JBOD connected via SAS cable to the Vess R3600 head unit. If you plan to expand capacity using JBODs, it is necessary to use the Extend Pool process for each JBOD added. You can add up to 12 JBOD units to one Vess R3600.



#### Important

For a RAID5 or RAID6 pool, there is a limit of 36 disks. It is possible to expand a storage pool across multiple enclosures, however this is not a best practice; and doing so requires using RAID50 or RAID60.

### **Creating Spare Drive**

Spare drives can be created at anytime, as long as there are unassigned drives available. The spare drive should be the same type (SSD or HDD) as the drives in the pool. Note that in this example, there is only one pool created, so the *Type* is irrelevant.

To create a spare drive, go to the Pool menu, and click **Create a Spare Drive**. Click to select an available hard disk, the selected disk become darker in color to indicate selection. Change the following spare drive options as desired:

- **Revertible** (reverts back to spare drive status after RAID is repaired or restored)
- *Type* (*Global* available for any pool on the system, or *Dedicated* assigned to specific pool)
- *Media* (*HDD* or *SSD*, must be same as pool)

Click on the **Submit** button to create the spare drive.

#### Create spare drive

Revertible: Type: Global Dedicated Media Type: Hard Disk Drive Selected Physical Drives: 15 Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay	Go Back Create Spare	e Drive ®
Type:       Image: Global       Dedicated         Media Type:       Hard Disk Drive       Image: Global         Selected Physical Drives:       15         Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay         Image: Global       Image: Global	Revertible:	
Media Type:       Hard Disk Drive         Selected Physical Drives:       15         Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay         Image: Comparison of the second sec	Type:	Global     Dedicated
Selected Physical Drives: Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay	Media Type:	Hard Disk Drive
Enclosure 1: SBB-SAS-12G-3U-16Bay	Selected Physical Drives:	15
©         5         8         7         8           9         10         11         12		
9 10 11 12		© 5 8 7 8
		9 10 11 12
		Submit Cancel

#### Spare Drive List

Spare drives are listed in the Spare Drive list. Use this menu to delete a spare drive or to view more details about a spare drive. Click the gear icon and select *Detail* to view information about a spare drive.

To delete a spare drive, select it in the list and click on the **Delete** button. You will need to confirm that you want to delete the spare drive in a pop-up menu. Type "confirm" and click the Confirm button to remove the spare drive. The drive status reverts to an unassigned available drive.

			🎾 🕥 - administrator 🔁
≡	Pool	∯ Home / Pool / Spare Drive	
Dashboard	Create New Pool	Spare Drive $^{\oslash}$	
Pool	Overview	Display a summary of spare list. Create, delete or modify spare drive.	
SVolume	Pool List	Create Spare Drive Delete View Detail	
D NAS Share	Cache	ID Status Config Capacity Physical Drive ID Revertible	Type Dedicated to Pool
III NAS Account	Spare Drive	🔲 0 🛇 4 TB 15 Yes	Global 🔅
E Device	Pool01	🗌 1 🔮 4 TB 16 No	Global 🔅

#### View spare drives

# **CREATING A VOLUME**

Now that we have a storage pool, we can create volumes in the pool. The main decision for volumes is whether to use thin or full provisioning. Thin provisioning allows for creation of volumes which have a total cumulative capacity that is greater than the physical capacity available for the pool. Thin provisioning might not be appropriate for certain applications. So plan your storage utilization carefully.

To create a new volume, go to the **Volume** menu, click the **Create New Volume** button, and **Create Volume** menu appears.

≡	Volume	₩ Home / Volume / Create Volume
Dashboard	Create New Volume	« Co Back Create Volume
Pool	Overview      ·	Create new volume with specific pool, volume name, capacity and other settings.
S Volume	Volume List	Pool Name: B0 c1 T
NAS Share	LUN Mapping & Masking	* Volume Name: Max length is 32 characters.
INAS Account	Periodic Snapshot	Enable Thin Provision:
	🛢 v1	* Capacity: Max capacity 2.66 GB available
Device	€ v2	1 GB • 1PB thin provision
Administration	€ v3	✓ Expand Advanced Settings
	🛢 v4	
	🛢 v5	Submit Cancel

#### Create new volume

In the Create Volume menu, enter a name for the new volume, and click the *Enable Thin Provisioning* option if you plan to use thin provisioning on this pool.

Next, enter a value for the volume capacity, note that you need to specify *TB* or *GB* in a separate pull-down menu. Click on the **Submit** button to create the new volume. This volume should now appear listed in the **Volume List**. Volumes are exported by default. An exported volume becomes available for sharing on the storage network. To Un-export a volume, use the Volume list menu.

### Volume List

Use the Volume List menu to *Un-export*, *Export*, or *Delete* existing volumes. Also, this is where you can link to *LUN Mapping and Masking* to enable it.

To view more detailed information for a volume, you can either click the gear icon for the volume and select the *Detail* option, or click on the volume name in the left panel under *Overview*. Use the individual volume menu to link to the **Snapshot** and **Clone** menus.

#### Volume List

Volume	# Home / Volume / Overview				
Create New Volume	Volume List <sup>®</sup>				
Overview      ·	Display a summary of all volumes, delete or modify a specifio volume, filter volume by volume name.				
Volume List	View Modify Delete Export Un-export More - T				
LUN Mapping & Masking	ID Name Type Status Capacity	Exported Status	Pool Name	Affinity	
Periodic Snapshot	0 R5_c1 Advanced 🛇 OK, Synchronizing Total:5.49 TB	Exported	R5_c1	Controller1	<b>Q</b> -
■ R5_c1	1 R5_c2 Advanced 📀 OK, Synchronizing Total:3 TB	Exported	R5_c2	Controller1	
■ R5_c2					

#### Individual volume information

Volume		
Create New Volume	R5_c1 <sup>©</sup>	
Overview	Display detailed information of volu	ne.
■ R5_c1	Modify Delete Un-exp	ort Snapshot & Clone
	Volume Information	
	Name:	R5_c1
	Pool Name:	R5_c1
	Туре:	Advanced
	Status:	OK, Synchronizing
	Capacity:	Total:5.49 TB
	Thin Provision:	Disabled
	Exported Status:	Exported
	Exported WWN:	2277-0001-55ae-63ef
		Expand Detail Information

### Snapshots

A volume snapshot is used to capture a read-only copy of the volume status at the time the snapshot is created.

The snapshot is saved in case it is necessary to revert back to the volume status at the time of the snapshot for disaster recovery. This is called a rollback.

Rolling back to a previous snapshot will discard all data changes that have occurred between the time of the snapshot and the current time.

Snapshots and clones are a quick and low cost (in terms of capacity used) means of backing up a volume for the purpose of recovery.

To create a volume snapshot, click on the volume name in the left panel, click the **Snapshot & Clone** button, *you will see the Snapshot & Clone list*, then click the **Create Snapshot** button.

#### Create Snapshot

🖀 Home / Volume / WebServer01 / Snap	shot & Clone / Create Snapshot			
« Go Back Create Snapshot <sup>®</sup>				
Pool Name:	Pool01			
Volume Name:	WebServer01			
Snapshot Name:				
	Submit Cancel			

In the Create Snapshot menu, enter a name for the snapshot and click the **Submit** button. The snapshot will appear listed Snapshot and Clone list.

### Clones

A clone is created from a snapshot as a means of backing up the snapshot. If you intend to delete a snapshot that has a clone, you must first delete the clone.

To create a snapshot clone, first create the snapshot, select it in the Snapshot & Clone list, click on the **Create Clone** button.

# Home / Snapshot & Clone / Create Clone	
« Go Back Create Clone <sup>(2)</sup>	
Create Clone	
Pool Name:	Pool01
Volume Name:	WebServer01
Snapshot Name:	2017.04.21
Clone Name:	
	Submit Cancel

#### Create Clone

In the Create Clone menu, enter a name for the clone and click the **Submit** button.

### Snapshots

To rollback using a snapshot, select the snapshot, click on the gear icon, and choose the *Rollback Snapshot* option. You are required to confirm that you want to rollback using the snapshot in a pop-up menu. Type "confirm" and click on the **Confirm** button to proceed with the rollback. Remember, any changes in the volume that have occurred since the snapshot will be lost.

=	Volume	R Home / Volume / R5_c1 / Snapshot & Clone	
🚳 Dashboard	Create New Volume	« Go Back Snapshot & Clone <sup>®</sup>	
Pool	Overview     ·	Display information about snapshot & clone, create or delete snapshot, create or delete clone.	
Volume	Volume List	Create Snapshot Create Clone Delete Snapshot Delete Clone More - T	
NAS Share	LUN Mapping & Masking	Snapshol/Clone Name Exported Status Used Capacity Capacity	Created Date
Ell NAS Account	Periodic Snapshot	daily-0-20190709182025-001 Un-Exported 20.05 GB	2019-07-09 18:20:26
E Device	■ R5_c2	dally-0-20190709181012-001 Un-Exported 19.39 GB	2019-07-09 18:10:12
F Administration	■ R50_c1	daily-0-20190709175020-001 Un-Exported 20.10 GB	2019-07-09 1 Create Clone 2019-07-09 1 View Snapshot
	R60_c2	dally-0-20190709174029-001 Un-Exported 9.56 GB	2019-07-09 1 Modify Snapshot
	R10_c1	daily-0-20190709173015-001 Un-Exported 15.20 GB	2019-07-09 1 Rollback Snapshot
		daily-0-20190709172017-001 Un-Exported 16.15 GB	2019-07-09 1 Export Snapshot
		daily-0-20190709171012-001 Un-Exported 15 GB	2019-07-09 1r. tv. re 🗤 😽
		daily-0-20190709170016-001 Un-Exported 15.61 GB	2019-07-09 17:00:16
		dally-0-20190709165017-001 Un-Exported 111.02 GB	2019-07-09 16:50:17

#### Rollback Snapshot

# LUN Mapping and Masking

This feature applies to Fibre Channel SAN and iSCSI subsystems and controls user access to storage resources.

- LUN Mapping Maps a LUN to an initiator; a LUN can be mapped to multiple initiators.
- LUN Masking The process of applying a LUN Map.

To access LUN mapping:

- 1. Click the Volume tab.
- 2. Under Overview, click the LUN Mapping & Masking menu link.

To enable or disable LUN Masking, click on the **Enable LUN Masking** slider to toggle on LUN masking.

### Adding a LUN Map

For Fibre Channel and iSCSI (SAN) systems, you can set up an Initiator LUN map.

A maximum of 256 logical drives can be mapped to a Fibre Channel initiator.

To assign a LUN to an initiator, the initiator must have been previously added to the initiator list.

(See "Adding a Fibre Channel or iSCSI Initiator" on page 110.)

To add a LUN map:

- 1. Click the Volume tab.
- 2. Click on LUN Mapping & Masking.
- 3. Click the LUN Mapping button. (See sample menu on next page)
- 4. In the LUN Mapping menu, the Initiators appear on the left side with volumes (including snapshots and clones) on the right. Use this menu to select a volume or volumes to assign to an initiator. Click the box to select an ID number of existing volumes, snapshots or clones in the right side, and use the arrow transfer button to assign them to the preferred initiator.
- 5. Click the **Submit** button.

The new LUN map is created.

 By default, LUN Mapping & Masking is not enabled. To use LUN Mapping & Masking, it must be enabled in the LUN Mapping & Masking tab.

#### LUN Mapping

	1	<b>≣</b> Vo	lume	එු Sna	pshot [	Clone
C Initiator ID 0 21-00-00-0e-1e-2c-69-90	<		ID	Name	Capacity	Pool Name
	1					
C Initiator ID 1 21-00-00-0e-1e-2c-69-91	~	sea	arcn t	or name		
Add a volume/snapshot/clone here	>		0	v1	35 GB	R0_c1(Pool
SCSI Initiator ID 2 ign.1991-05.com.microsoft:asg-eut-host1			1	v2	35 GB	R1_c2(Pool
Add a volume/snapshot/clone here	"		2	v3	35 GB	R5_c1(Pool
			3	v4	35 GB	R6_c2(Pool
			4	v5	35 GB	R10_c1(Poo
Submit Cancel			5	v6	35 GB	R50_c2(Poo
			6	v7	35 GB	R60_c1(Poo
			10	iSCSI_v1	40 GB	R5_c1(Pool
			11	iSCSI v2	45 GB	R6 c2(Pool
			12	iSCSI v3	50 GB	B50 c2(Poo
			12	isosi va	55 GP	R60_01/R00
			10	13031_14	55 GB	NOU_CI(POU

### Editing a LUN Map

Editing a LUN map is the action of assigning a logical drive or LUN to an initiator. By changing the assignment,

you change the initiator's access.

To edit a LUN map:

- 1. Click the **Volume** tab.
- 2. Click on LUN Mapping & Masking.
- 3. Select the LUN to be edited.
- 4. Click on the **Gear** icon and select the *Modify* option.
- 5. To remove a volume from an initiator, click to select a Volume on the left side, and use the arrow transfer button to remove the volume from the initiator. To add a volume, Click the box to select an ID number of existing volumes in the right side, and use the arrow transfer button to assign the volume to the preferred initiator.
- 6. Click the **Submit** button.

The modified LUN map is created.

#### LUN Mapping & Masking

A Home /	Volume / LUI	N Mapping & Masking			
LUN	Mappin	g & Masking $^{\odot}$			
Display a s	ummary of LUN	Mapping & Masking list. Enable or disable LUN Masking. I	Delete or modify LUN Mapping.		
Delete	LUN Mappi	ing	Ena	able LUN Maskir	ng 🥣
	Initiator ID	Initiator Name	LUN Mapping		
<b>•</b>	0	21-00-00-0e-1e-2c-69-90	(Volume0, Initiator LUN 0);(Volume1, Initiator LUN 1)		φ٠.
	1	21-00-00-0e-1e-2c-69-91	(Volume0, Initiator LUN 0);(Volume1, Initiator LUN 1)	Modify	
	2	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:asg-eut-host1	(Volume10, Initiator LUN 0);(Volume11, Initiator LUN 1).	Delete	

### **Deleting a LUN Map**

Deleting a LUN map prevents the initiator from accessing the LUN while LUN masking is enabled.

To delete a LUN map:

- 1. Click the **Volume** tab.
- 2. Click on LUN Mapping & Masking.

The list of LUN maps appears.

- 3. Click to select the LUN map you want, then click the Gear icon, and select the Delete option
- 4. In the Confirmation box, type the word "confirm" in the field provided and click the **Confirm** button.

### Enabling and Disabling LUN Masking

Disabling LUN masking allows all initiators to access all LUNs in your data storage. However, disabling LUN

masking does not delete existing LUN maps.

These actions require **Administrator** or **Super User** privileges.

To enable or disable LUN masking:

- 1. Click the **Volume** tab.
- 2. Click on LUN Mapping & Masking.
- 3. Click on the **Enable LUN Masking** slider to toggle off (disable) or on (enable) LUN masking.

# **CREATING A NAS SHARE**

The procedure for creating a NAS Share includes first creating a storage pool (see "Creating a Shared Storage Pool" on page 55), then creating the NAS Share. You can set up protocols when creating the NAS Share, or change them after it is created. You also need to set up Users, User Groups and Domains.

Follow these instructions to create a new NAS Share:

1. In the NAS Share menu, click on the Create New NAS Share button. A new menu appears.

≡	NAS Share	W Home / NAS Share / Create New NAS Share	
🚳 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Go Back Create New NAS	Share <sup>®</sup>
🔤 Pool	Overview     V	Create new NAS share with specific pool, NAS share	e name, capacity and other settings.
Volume	NAS Share List	* Pool Name:	ri v
D NAS Share	Periodic Snapshot	* NAS Share:	NAS01
III NAS Account		Enable Thin Provision:	
E Device		* Capacity:	Max capacity 18.33 TB available
🖋 Administration			18 GB • 1PB thin provision
		Enable Protocol:	VINFS VIFT VISMB VINTP
		Enable Time Machine:	
		* Recsize:	128 KB *
		* Sync Mode:	Standard v
			Collapse Advanced Settings
			Submit Cancel

#### **Create New NAS Share**

- 2. Choose the **Pool Name** used for the new NAS share from the pull-down menu.
- 3. Enter a name for the **NAS Share**.
- 4. You have the option to Enable Thin Provisioning (default is not enabled). Note that if you cannot use Thin Provisioning if you intend to use the Maximum available capacity for the NAS share. And if you do enable it, the NAS Share Capacity Utilization will appear to use up the entire space allotted for the NAS share (see next step) in the Dashboard menu.

- 5. Set the Capacity for the NAS Share. If you are not using Thin Provisioning, you have the option to use the Maximum capacity if you click the Max capacity available box. If you use Maximum capacity, this will use the entire capacity of the disk pool for the NAS share, therefore you cannot create another NAS share or a SAN volume on the disk pool used.
- Use the check boxes to select which Protocols to enable on the NAS share. Default settings are FTP, NFS, SMB, HTTP enabled. See "NAS Share Protocols" on page 71 for more details.
- Click the check box if you want to enable **Time Machine** for the NAS share. Default setting is not enabled.
- 8. You can expand the menu to view the Advanced Options. Use this expanded menu to change Recsize

#### and Sync Mode.

Sync Mode options are as follows:

*Standard* - means that synchronous share transactions, such as fsync, O\_DSYNC, O\_SYNC, and so on, are written to the intent log.

*Always* - ensures that every share transaction is written and flushed to stable storage by a returning system call. This value has a significant performance penalty.

*Disabled* - means that synchronous requests are disabled. Share transactions are only committed to stable storage on the next transaction group commit, which might be after many seconds. This value gives the best performance, with no risk of corrupting the pool.

Caution: This disabled value is dangerous because the filesystem is ignoring the synchronous transaction demands of applications, such as databases or NFS operations. Setting this value on the currently active root or via share might result in unexpected behavior, application data loss, or increased vulnerability to replay attacks. You should only use this value if you fully understand all the associated risks.

The default value is *Standard*.

9. Click the Submit button to create the new NAS Share. The newly created NAS share appears in the NAS

Share list.

# **Viewing NAS Share Information**

To view information on a NAS Share, select the NAS Share, click ont the gear icon and choose the View option.

Information displayed includes:

- NAS Share ID
- Pool Name
- Recsize
- Used Capacity
- Preferred Controller ID
- Time Machine status
- Logbias

Sync Mode

- NFS Mount Point
- Written Size after Last Snapshot
- The Latest Snapshot & Clone

- NAS Share Name
- Thin Provision status
- Mounted Status
- Total Capacity
- Share Protocol Enabled
- Compression
- **,** - - -

# **NAS Share Protocols**

FTP, NFS, SMB, and HTTP can be disabled or enabled when you set up the NAS share. After creating the NAS share, you can use the Modify NAS Share menu to enable or disable protocols, or enable/disable them and configure other settings using the menu specific to each protocol.

Click on the **Protocol** menu link to view the menu used for Settings. To enable/disable any protocol in the list, you can click to select the protocol and click on the **Enable** or **Disable** button at the top of the list; or click on the Gear icon and select the *Enable* or *Disable* option. A pop-up menu will ask you to confirm the protocol enable or disable action. Likewise, to access the **Settings** menu for any listed protocol, select the protocol in the list and click on the Settings button; or click on the Gear icon for the protocol and select the **Settings** option. The Settings menu for selected protocol appears. Any settings changes apply only to the individual NAS share setup. If you have more than one NAS share, the others are not affected and must be configured individually to change protocol settings.

					🌾 📩 💽 - administrator 🗈
=	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share /	Protocol		
🕸 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	Protocol <sup>®</sup>			
🗐 Pool	Overview      ·	View protocol status, modi	fy and enable/disable protocol.		
S Volume	NAS Share List	Enable Disable	Settings		
	Protocol		Protocol Name	Status	
U NAS Share	Periodic Snapshot		CMP	Enchlad - Bunning	
III NAS Account	D NAS01		SMB	Enabled - Kuming	•••
E Device			FTP	Enabled - Running	÷
			NFS	Enabled - Running	÷
Administration			нттр	Enabled - Running	<b>0</b> -

#### NAS Protocol list

### Changing SMB Settings

To change the settings for SMB network protocol (Samba server) including enabling ACL authentication, on the selected NAS share, access the **SMB Settings** menu and configure the following:

- Enable/Disable: Click the **Enable** box to checkmark the box if you want to enable the SMB networking protocol. Click to remove the checkmark to disable SMB.
- Workgroup: Enter a name for the Workgroup for the server user group. Default is WORKGROUP.
- Description: Enter a description for the Samba server setup
- Windows ACL: If you will use ACL, enable it here by selecting the Yes radio button. See

#### SMB Settings

≡	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share / Protocol / Protocol Settings	
🚳 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Co Back SMB Settings	
Pool	Overview     V	Enable or disable samba service, modify settings of samba	service for the system.
S Volume	NAS Share List	Enable:	
	Protocol	Workgroup	WORKGROUP
C NAS Share	Periodic Snapshot	nongroup.	Workenoop
NAS Account	🗅 ADM	Description:	SMB Server
E Device		* Windows ACL:	No Yes
& Administration		SMB Admin:	ADVSTOR\ivy
			Save Reset Cancel

Click the **Save** button to change the SMB settings for the NAS share.

### Changing FTP Settings

To change the settings for FTP on the selected NAS share, access the **FTP Settings** menu and configure the following:

- Enable/Disable: Click the **Enable** box to checkmark the box if you want to enable the FTP protocol. Click to remove the checkmark to disable the protocol.
- Command Port: Change the port number used for FTP on the NAS share. Default is port 21.
- Client Code Type: Select the language input used for FTP commands.
- Protocol Type: Choose SFTP, Standard FTP, FTP over SSL (Explicit) or FTP over SSL (Implicit, Command Port 990)
- Maximum Download Rate (KB/s): Use to limit FTP download speed. Default is no limit.
- Maximum Upload Rate (KB/s): Use to limit FTP upload speed. Default is no limit.

=	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share / Protocol / Protocol Settings		
B Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Go Back FTP Settings		
📾 Pool	Overview     V	Enable or disable FTP service, modify settings of FTP service	e for the system.	
SVolume	NAS Share List	Enable:		
D NAS Share	Protocol Poriodic Spacehot	* Command Port [1-65535]:	21	
III NAS Account		* Passive Ports [1024-65535]:	60001 ~ 65000	
E Device		* Client Coding Type:	English	•
F Administration		* Protocol Type:	SFTP	T
•		* Maximum Download Rate (KB/s):	0	(0: Unlimited)
		* Maximum Upload Rate (KB/s):	0	(0: Unlimited)
			Save Reset	Cancel

#### FTP Settings

Click the Save button to change the FTP settings for the NAS share.

### **Changing NFS Settings**

To change the settings for NFS on the selected NAS share, access the **NFS Settings** menu and configure the following:

- Enable/Disable: Click the **Enable** box to checkmark the box if you want to enable the NFS service. Click to remove the checkmark to disable NFS.
- Mounted Port: Change the port number used for mounting NFS serivce on the NAS share. Default is port 56789.
- Count: Change the count used for NFS service (8, 16, 32, 64 or 128). Default is 32.

Click the **Save** button to change the NFS settings for the NAS share.

Additional information listed in the NFS Settings menu includes port numbers for the port mapper, nfsd, rpc.statd and rpc. lockd.

#### **NFS Settings**

PROMISE			
≡	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share / Protocol / Protocol Settings	
🙆 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Co Back NFS Settings	
Pool	Overview     ·	Enable or disable NFS service, modify settings of NFS service	ice for the system.
SVolume	NAS Share List	Enable:	
D NAS Share	Protocol Poriodic Spapshot	* mountd Port [1024-65533]:	56789
III NAS Account		* Count:	32 *
Device		portmapper Port:	.111
📕 Administration		nfsd Port:	2049
		rpc.statd Port:	56790
		rpc.lockd Port:	56791
			Save Reset Cancel

### Changing HTTP Settings

To change the HTTP settings on the selected NAS share, access the **HTTP Settings** menu and configure the following:

- Enable/Disable: Click the **Enable** box to checkmark the box if you want to enable the HTTP service. Click to remove the checkmark to disable HTTP service.
- HTTP: Change the port number used for mounting HTTP serivce on the NAS share. Default is port 8088.
- HTTPS: Change the port number used for HTTPS service. Default is 8089.

PROMISE			
≡	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share / Protocol / Protocol Settings	
🔀 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Co Back HTTP Settings	
🔤 Pool	Overview     ·	Enable or disable HTTP service, modify settings of HTTP service,	rvice for the system.
	NAS Share List		-
C Volume	Protocol	Enable:	
D NAS Share	Periodic Snapshot	HTTP Connection Port [1~65535]:	8088
III NAS Account	D ADM	HTTPS Connection Port [1~65535]:	8089
E Device			
F Administration			Save Reset Cancel

#### **HTTP Settings**

# **Managing NAS Accounts**

Management of NAS local and domain users and user groups, user permission settings and the Domain setting are done in the menus under the **NAS Account** tab. NAS users can be local or domain users. A user can be in multiple user groups.

#### NAS User list (default list)

			🐠 🛓 🕒 administrator 🗄	Э
≡	NAS Account	W Home / NAS Account / NAS User		
Dashboard	* NAS User	NAS User <sup>®</sup>		
B Pool	31 NAS Group	Display information about NAS users. Add or delete a specific user, change a specific user's password, modify a specific user's infor	mation, add multiple users.	
Volume	Domain	Add New User         Add Multiple Users         View         Change Password         Modify         Delete         Q		
D NAS Share		Name Display Name Primary Group Email	Status	
III NAS Account		admin NAS default User -	Ready 🔅 -	
		user1 users	Ready 🔅 -	
- Device		user2 users	Ready 🔅 🗸	
Administration		user3 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user4 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user5 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user6 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user7 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user8 users	Ready 🔅 -	
		user9 users	Ready 🔅 🗸	

# Using the NAS User list

Access the NAS User menu, click on **NAS Account**, then **NAS User** to view the NAS User list. Use the list of current local users to view basic information, change the user password, change user settings or delete users. Use the search function is used to locate a user by name. To navigate the pages, click on the arrow symbols near the bottom of the menus to change the display, previous page, next page, first and last page. Use **Page Capacity** to determine how many rows of user or group information are displayed on the page. The Search function is used to locate a user by name. To search a name, type the name in the entry field and press **Enter**. For each of the user actions listed here, first click to check the box for the User in the list and move the cursor to the list row for the user, and click on the appropriate button (**View**, **Change Password**, **Modify**, **Delete**) to perform the action or display information; or click the Gear icon for the User in the list and select the appropriate action from the menu.

### To View NAS User information

Click on the **View** button to display basic user information.

### To change NAS User password

- 1. Click Change Password button
- 2. Type the new password in the **Password** and again in the **Retype Password** entry fields.
- 3. Click the **Submit** button.

### To remove a NAS User

- 1. Click the **Delete** button.
- 2. Click the **Confirm** button.

# Add NAS Users

Local users can be added individually or many users can be added at once. For multiple users, an index number is added to the user name for the quantity of users being added.

#### Add New User (NAS User)

* Name:	Maxlength is 31.	
Display Name:	Maxlength is 31.	
* Password:	Password length is 6 ~ 16.	
* Retype Password:		
Email:		
Department:		
Telephone:		
<ul> <li>Assign Primary Group:</li> </ul>	Group Name Filter by NAS group name users (El Primary Group) 1-1 of 1 items	L users

### To add a single user for the NAS

- 1. Click NAS Account tab > NAS User.
- 2. Click the Add New User button.

In the Add New User menu, enter the required settings:

- Name
- Display Name
- Password
- Retype Password

Additional information for the NAS User can also be entered at this time. These fields are not required:

- Email
- Department
- Telephone

Finally, enter a group name in Assign Primary Group if you plan to setup NAS User Groups:

3. Click the **Submit** button to apply and save the settings.

The newly created user appears listed in the NAS User list.

### To add a multiple users for the NAS

There are two ways to add multiple users. One option is to use the procedure described below to use an automatically indexed user name (ex. user01, user02, user03). Alternatively you can create and edit a .csv file to and upload the file and apply the settings.

To add new users with the Wizard:

- 1. Click NAS Account tab > NAS User.
- 2. Click the Add Multiple Users button, choose the Wizard option in the new menu and click Next.

- 3. Enter the required settings:
  - Start Index
  - Quantity
  - **User Name** (the prefix of the user name that is followed by the index value)
  - Password
  - Retype Password
- 4. Click the Next button.
- 5. Review the new user data in the final Wizard menu, click **Submit** to create the new group of users.

#### To upload and edited .csv file of new users:

- 1. Follow the procedure described above using the Wizard option, but this time, use the **Download** button in the final menu, do not Apply.
- 2. Open the file you just downloaded and edit the information to change user names, add more users, etc.
- Repeat the procedure from the beginning, but this time choose the *Upload* option in the menu and click Next.
- 4. Locate the edited .csv file, and click the **Next** button.
- 5. Review the new user data in the final menu, click **Submit** to create the new group of users.

### To remove Multiple Users from the NAS Users list

- 1. Click NAS Account tab > NAS User.
- 2. Click the **Delete Multiple Users** button.
- 3. Click to select the check box for each user you want to delete. Use paging feature if necessary.
- 4. Click the **Apply** button.

# **NAS Group settings**

Use the NAS Group menus for setting both Local and Domain User groups.

### **Query User Groups**

In the **NAS Account** tab, click the **NAS Group** button and use the search function to query information on user groups. To navigate the pages, click on the arrow symbols near the bottom of the menus to change the display, previous page, next page, first and last page. Use **Page Capacity** to determine how many rows of user or group information are displayed on the page. The Search function is used to locate a group by name. To search a name, type the name in the entry field and press **Enter**.

#### NAS Group list

				( <b>9</b> )	🛓 💭 - admi	nistrator 🔊
=	NAS Account	# Home / NAS Account / NAS	6 Group			
🚳 Dashboard	≜ NAS User	NAS Group <sup>®</sup>				
Pool	A NAS Group	Display information about NAS gr	oup, add NAS group, view or modify specific NAS gro	up, delete specific or multiple grou	up(s).	
S Volume	Domain	Add New Group View	Modify Delete Q			
D NAS Share		Group Name	Group Member	Description	Status	
INAS Account		NASg1			Ready	<b>0</b> -
E Device		users	user1,user2,user3,user4,user5,use	NAS default group	Ready	0-
🖉 Administration						
Q Discovery	New NAS Group was created a	successfully.				×

## **Using the NAS Group list**

In NAS configuration: NAS Account > NAS Group. Use the list of current groups to view members information,

change groups settings or to delete the group.

### To View Group Members

- 1. Move the cursor to the row of the group in the list.
- 2. Click the View button.

### Add User Group and choose members

- 1. Use the **Type** pull-down menu toggles the menu between *User Group*.
- 2. Click the **New Group Create** button.
- 3. Enter a Group Name and click the boxes to select member local users from the list.
- 4. Click the **Submit** button to create the local user group.

#### Modify NAS Group

NAS Account #	Home / NAS Account / NAS Cro Co Back Modify NAS	up / Modity NAS Croup S Group ®
Domain	- A N	
	Description:	NAS default group
	Assign Member(s):	User Name       Filter by NAS user name       user1       user2       user3       user4       user5
		<ul> <li>user8</li> <li>user8</li> <li>user9</li> </ul>
		1-0 of 0 items Save Cancel

### To change User Group settings

- 1. Select the group from the list to change.
- 2. Click the **Modify** button.
- 3. Add or remove local users by selecting or deselecting the selection boxes for the users in the list.
- 4. Click the Save button.

### To remove a User Group

- 1. Use the **Type** pull-down menu toggles the menu between *User Group*.
- 2. Click the Delete button.
- 3. Click the **Confirm** button.

# **Domain Configuration**

Use the Domain menu to create a Domain Workgroup or to join a Domain on the network using Windows Active

Directory, LDAP or Open Directory.

Domain	Settings
--------	----------

				🧐 🛓 💁 administrator 🗃
≡	NAS Account	# Home / NAS Account / Domain		
Dashboard	≜ NAS User	Domain <sup>®</sup>		
Pool	AS Group	Display domain information, make domain set	ttings or refresh.	
S Volume	Domain	Refresh		
D NAS Share		Status:	Controller 1: Joined	
III NAS Account		Domain Settings		
E Device			-	
🖋 Administration		Enable:		
		* Domain Type:	Active Directory *	Please make sure network settings, e.g. Default route, DNS settings, are prepared for joining AD Domain. And the subsystem date time should be in consistent with AD server.
		* Domain Name:	ADVSTOR.PROMISE.NET	
		* KDC:	AdvStor-EUT-Host8.advstor.promise.net	
		* User Name:	ivy	
		* NetBIOS Name:	ADVSTOR	
			Save	



#### Important

Make sure network settings support joining the AD Domain. Also, time settings need to be consistent with the AD server.

### **Domain Settings**

- 1. In NAS configuration: **Account > Domain**.
- 2. Check the **Enable** box to enable the Domain settings.
- 3. Choose the **Domain Type** and configure settings accordingly.
  - Active Directory
    - i. Enter the Active Directory domain and domain DNS server (server IP), the NetBIOS name is set automatically.
    - ii. Click the **Next** button.
    - iii. Select one domain controller.
    - iv. Enter the Administrator Account and Password.
    - v. Click the **Apply** button to join the domain.

AD domain uses default permission.

Use AD RAID storage GUI to set Permission or ACL.

### To Enable a Domain

In NAS configuration: **Account > Domain** then click to check the **Enable** box button.

### To Set a Workgroup

- 1. In NAS configuration: **Account > Domain**.
- 2. Enter a Workgroup Name.
- 3. Click the **Save** button.

### To Refresh Domain Data

- 1. In NAS configuration: **Account > Domain**.
- 2. Click the **Refresh Domain Data** button.

# **ACL Setting**

The Access Control List (ACL) rule-based access permission protocol is applied to a Share Disk when ACL is enabled. To configure the rules for ACL, go to the **NAS Share List** menu, select the NAS Share you want to configure, click on the *Gear* icon for that NAS Share, and select the *ACL* option. The ACL menu appears. You will see the current ACL rule for the NAS Share. To clear the current settings, click on the **Clear** button to set the ACL rules to default setting.



#### Note

Windows ACL must first be enabled in the SMB settings. For instructions, see "Using Windows ACL" on page 86.

Access permission is listed after rules are added. To change the ACL configuration for the NAS share, click on the **ACL Settings** button. The **Apply Onto:** pull-down menu is used to apply the rule to the entire NAS Share (*This folder and its subfolders*) or to a selected folder in the NAS Share (*This folder only*). Click on **Save** to apply the new configuration.

#### ACL Settings menu

NAS Share Create New NAS Share Overview × NAS Share List	<ul> <li># Home / NAS Share / nas1 / ACL Settings</li> <li>Co Baok ACL Settings <sup>(2)</sup></li> <li>For specific users, groups or everyone, set ACL permission with Deny-Access, Read-Only, Read-Write or Windows advanced permission when Windows ACL is enabled.</li> </ul>
Protocol	Folder: FS/nas1
Periodic Snapshot	Apply Onto: This folder and its sub-folders 🔻
🗅 nast	Type:     User     v     Q       User Name     Preview     Group Permission     Deny-Access     Read-Only     Read-Write
	There is no data.
	Save

ACL rules are applied by Type: use the Type pull-down menu to select Everyone, User or Group, then check a box

for the appropriate rule to Deny-Access, Read-Only or Read-Write.

#### ACL Settings for NAS Account Users

Home / NAS Share / nas1 / ACL Settings

	Folder:	FS/nas1			
	Apply Onto:	This folder and its su	ub-folders 🔻		
Type: User	* Q				
User Name	Preview	Group Permission	Deny-Access	Read-Only	Read-Write
n1	Read-Only	Unset		✓	
n2	Read-Only	Unset		<b>V</b>	
n3	Read-Only	Unset		<b>~</b>	
n4	Read-Only	Unset		<b>V</b>	
u1	Read-Write	Unset			<b>v</b>
u2	Read-Write	Unset			<b>V</b>

#### ACL Settings for NAS Account Group

	Folder:	FS/nas1		
	Apply Onto:	This folder and its sub-fold	ers 🔻	
/pe: Group	o v Q Preview	Deny-Access	Read-Only	Read-Write
Igroup	Read-Only			
isers	Unset			

### Using Windows ACL

To use Windows ACL, it must first be enabled in SMB Settings.

- Access the SMB Settings menu: NAS Share > Protocol, select SMB in the Protocol list and click on the Settings button
- 2. Click on the Yes radio button for Windows ACL.
- 3. Click on the **Save** button. Windows ACL is enabled for the NAS Share. ACL can now be configured via the default NAS administrator 'admin' using a Windows computer.

PROMISE			
≡	NAS Share	# Home / NAS Share / Protocol / Protocol Settings	
🔀 Dashboard	Create New NAS Share	« Co Back SMB Settings	
🔤 Pool	Overview     ·	Enable or disable samba service, modify settings of samba	service for the system.
S Makuma	NAS Share List		-
S volume	Protocol	Enable:	
D NAS Share	Periodic Snapshot	Workgroup:	WORKGROUP
III NAS Account	D ADM	Description:	SMB Server
E Device		* Windows ACL:	No Yes
		SMB Admin:	ADVSTOR\ivy
🔎 Administration			
			Savo Reset Cancel

#### SMB Settings

In the administrator's Windows system:

1. Open the **Network** folder.



2. Right-click on the node you want to configure for ACL, scroll down to select Properties.



3. In the Properties menu under the **Group or user names** list, click on the **Edit** button.

Accounting (\\192.168.201.95) Properties						
General Network Security Previous Versions Customize						
Object name: \\192.168.201.95\Accounting						
Group or user names:						
& Everyone						
👗 root (Unix User\root) 😑						
🚜 root (Unix Group\root) —						
& CREATOR OWNER						
To change permissions, click Edit.						
Permissions for Everyone Allow Deny						
Full control 🗸 🛆						
Modify 🗸						
Read & execute 🗸						
List folder contents 🗸 🗏						
Read 🗸						
Write 🗸						
Special permissions Y						
For special permissions or advanced settings, Advanced click Advanced.						
OK Cancel Apply						

4. Click on the **Add** button.



5. In the Select Users or Groups menu, enter the user name to add to the ACL users list, and click on

Check Names button.

Select Users or Groups	x
Select this object type:	
Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals	Object Types
From this location:	
192.168.201.95	Locations
Enter the object names to select ( <u>examples</u> ):	
user3	Check Names
	hĝ
Advanced OK	Cancel
6. The new user appears in the list (syntax: IP address/user name). Click the **OK** button to return to the Properties menu.

Select this object type:	
Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals	Object Types
From this location:	
192.168.201.95	Locations
Enter the object names to select ( <u>examples</u> ):	
Enter the object names to select ( <u>examples</u> ): 192.168.201.95\user3	Check Names

7. The newly created user appears in the **Group or user names** list. Click **OK** to exit the menu.

Permissions for Account	ting (\\192.16	8.201.95) ×
Security		
Object name: \\192.168.201.9	5\Accounting	
Group or user names:		
Section (Unix Group \root)		^
& CREATOR OWNER		
CREATOR GROUP	-2)	=
Luser3 (192 168 201 95/user	9) 2)	
	5)	×
	A <u>d</u> d	<u>R</u> emove
Permissions for user3	Allow	Deny
Full control		
Modify		
Read & execute	<b>~</b>	
List folder contents	✓	
Read	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	
ОК	Cancel	Apply

## **MANAGEMENT USER**

Management users can view the Vess R3600 user interface or make configuration changes according to the privilege level configured for the user. Only **Super** user level management users can add, remove or modify users. *Note that the Administrator has Super user level privilege.* 

#### PROMISE ≡ Administration # Home / Administration / Management User C Event Management User <sup>®</sup> 🙆 Dashboard Management User Pool Display information about management users. Add or delete a specific user, change a specific user's pa odify a specific user's information A Service Add New User Change Password Modify Delete Event Subscription Solume III Performance Monitor User Name Display Name Privilege Email D NAS Share Status Image Version administrator Super user Super Enabled Ø.in the second INAS Account I License Enabled ۰. а Super E Device Firmware Update 🗲 Administration Background Activity Restore Factory Def... C Import/Export Product Registration E Setup Wizard

#### Management User list

### Adding a New User

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To create a user:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab
- 3. In the Management User menu, click the Add New User button.
- 4. In the **Add User** dialog box, enter the information in the fields provided:
  - Name This is the user's login name
  - Display Name
  - Password
  - Retype Password
  - User Email Required for event notification
- Choose a privilege level from the drop-down menu. See the table below for a description of the privilege types.
- 6. (Optional) Uncheck to disable this User account.
- 7. Click the **Submit** button. The user is added to the list.

User Privilege	25
Level	Meaning
View	Allows the user to See all status and settings but not to make any changes
Maintenance	Allows the user to perform maintenance tasks including Media Patrol, and Redundancy Check
Power	Allows the user to create (but not delete) pools and volumes, change RAID levels, change stripe size; change settings of components such as pools, volumes, physical drives, and the controller
Super	Allows the user full access to all functions including create and delete users and changing the settings of other users, and delete pools and volumes. The default "administrator" account is a <b>Super User</b>

### **Changing User Settings**

This action requires Administrator or a Super User privileges.

To change user settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab
- 3. In the **Management User** menu, choose the user and click the **Modify** button.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - For the Status box, check to enable this user account, uncheck to disable this user account
  - In the User Settings dialog box, enter a new Display Name or User Email address
  - Choose a new **Privilege** level from the drop-down menu.
- 5. Click the Save button.

#### **Changing User Passwords**

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To change a user's password:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab
- 3. In the **Management User** menu, choose the user and click the **Change Password** button.
- 4. In the Change Password dialog box, enter the information in the fields provided:
  - New Password
  - Retype Password
- 5. Click the Save button.

## **Deleting a User**

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges

To delete a user:

- 1. Click the **User** tab.
- 2. In the Management User menu, choose the user and click the Delete button.
- 3. In the **Confirmation** box, type the word "**confirm**" in the field provided and click the **Confirm** button.



Note The Administrator account cannot be deleted and the privilege level cannot be changed.

## **Setting User Event Subscriptions**

By default, event notification is set to the Major (severity) level for all events.

Subscribing users receive notification of events at the chosen severity level and all higher levels.



#### Note

Each user must have a valid Email address to receive events. Also, the email service must be properly configured with the SMTP server, including login information if necessary.

Changing a user subscription requires **Administrator** or **Super User** privileges.

To set a user event subscription:

- 1. Click the **User** tab.
- 2. In the User list, click the Gear icon for the user to configure, and choose the *Event Subscription* option.
- 3. Make settings changes as required:
  - For the **Enable Event Notification** box, check to enable for this user, uncheck to disable.
  - Click to change the priority options for each category of event.
- 4. Click the **Submit** button.

## DEVICE

Use the Device menus to monitor subsystem status and make settings changes to subsystem components, drives, network settings, etc.

#### **Device Overview**

			4) 🏦 📩 🕞 administrator 🕣		
≡	Device	# Home / Device / Overview			
🚯 Dashboard	Overview	Device Overview <sup>®</sup>			
Pool	Device View	Display information about subsystem and its statu	us. Click on Alias name to inline edit name. Click on button to set system's time, configure NTP settings or shutdown/restart subsystem.		
S Volume	Component List	Date and Time Settings Time Zone Set	tings NTP Settings Shutdown/Restart Subsystem		
NAS Share	Physical Drive	Device Status			
BII NAS Account	₩ UPS				
	↑ Initiator	Enclosure Status:	Enclosure 1: OK - Everything is OK;		
E Administration	* Target	Controller Status:	Controller 1: Not Present - N/A Controller 2: OK - Active		
Administration	A Network Management <				
	## FC Management <	Subsystem Information			
	iSCSI Management	Subsystem mornauon			
		Alias:	R3K_628c97 🕜 Edit		
		Model:	Vess R3604fi		
		WWN:	2000-0001-5562-8c97		
		Serial Number:			
		Redundancy Status:	Not Redundant		
		Redundancy Type:	Active-Active		
		System Date and Time:	2019-08-22 03:05:28		
		Time Zone:	(UTC+0:00) America/Danmarkshavn		
		Vendor:	Promise Technology,Inc.		
Q Discovery					

#### Viewing Subsystem Information

To view subsystem information, click the **Device menu** tab.

The list of subsystems and host controllers is displayed in **Device Overview**. Subsystem information includes:

- Alias, if assigned
- Model
- WWN World Wide Name
- Serial number
- Redundancy status
- Redundancy Type
- System date and time
- Time Zone
- Vendor

### **Restarting the Subsystem**

This function shuts down the subsystem and then restarts it.

To restart the subsystem:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Overview** icon.
- 3. Click the **Shutdown/Restart Subsystem** button.
- 4. Choose the Apply to option, Subsystem, Controller 1 or Controller 2.
- 5. Click the **Restart** button.
- 6. Type the word "confirm" in the field provided.
- 7. Click the **Confirm** button.

When the controller shuts down, your WebPAM PROe connection is lost.

- 8. Wait at least two minutes.
- 9. In your browser, click **Logout** in the WebPAM PROe Header, then log in again.

If you cannot log in immediately, wait 30 seconds and try again.

### Shutting Down the Subsystem

This function shuts down the RAID subsystem without restarting it.

To shutdown the subsystem:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Overview** icon.
- 3. Click the **Shutdown/Restart Subsystem** button.
- 4. Choose the Apply to option, Subsystem, Controller 1 or Controller 2.
- 5. Click the **Shutdown** button.
- 6. Type the word "**confirm**" in the field provided.
- 7. Click the **Confirm** button.

When the controller shuts down, your WebPAM PROe connection is lost.



#### Important

If your RAID subsystem manages JBOD expansion units, you must follow the proper startup procedure.

### **Restarting the Subsystem after a Shutdown**

To start the RAID subsystem:

- 1. Press the Power button on the front left side of the device being restarted.
- 2. Wait at least two minutes.
- 3. Open your browser and log into WebPAM PROe.

If you cannot log in immediately, wait 30 seconds and try again.

### **Device View**

The Device View menus display a real time virtual representation of the device used to check status of the subsystem and its components. Choose the Front View, Back View, and Internal View (click button in Back View menu). Hover the cursor over different components to see a summary of the status for that component.

#### **Device Front View**

		🈩 📥 😒- edministrator 🗄
≡	Device	W Home / Device / Device View / Front View
🙆 Dashboard	Overview	Front View <sup>®</sup>
Pool	© Device View ~	Display status of all physical drives in the virtual disk view. For more detail, hover the cursor over the labels of individual components.
Volume	Front View Back View	Enclosure 1: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay
D NAS Share	Topology	(2mm
III NAS Account	Component List	
E Device	Physical Drive	
F Administration	UPS	
	Initiator	Enclosure 2: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay
	A Network Management <	[ rease
	iSCSI Management	
		Enclosure 3: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay
Q Discovery		

٦

PROMISE		۵	🛓 💭 - administrator 🗄
	Device	W Home / Device / Device View / Back View	
Dashboard	Overview	Back View $^{\odot}$	
Pool	© Device View	Display status of the Enclosure, Controller, PSU, Fans and Ports. For more detail, hover the cursor over the labels of individual co	omponents. Click view icon at top
S Volume	Front View	right to see the virtual inside view.	
	Back View		
	Topology	Enclosure 1: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay	T I
NAS Account	Component List	Controller 1 🛇 — 🕑 Controller	r 2
Device	Physical Drive	IO Ports O	
& Administration	UPS	Port 5: Up, Active 5 6 2 7 5 6 O IO Ports	
	Initiator		
	🔏 Network Management <		
	iSCSI Management	Enclosure 2: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay	Click this to
			internal
		component to see a status	
		summary	
		6 11 6 12 0 PSUs	
		Englacing 2: VESS 2000-12C 211 16Pm	

#### **Device Internal View**

		🎕 🛓 🔘 edministrator E
=	Device	# Home / Device / Device View / Back View / Internal View
Dashboard	Overview	Internal View $^{\odot}$
Pool	O Device View	Display status for Batteries and local Temperatures. For more detail, hover the cursor over the labels of individual components.
Stolume	Front View	<b>#</b> 📀
D NAS Share	Back View Topology	Enclosure 1: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay
III NAS Account	Component List	
E Device	Physical Drive	
& Administration	■ UPS	Batteries
	Initiator	
	\land Network Management <	Enclosure 2: VESS-3000-12G-3U-16Bay
	iSCSI Management	
		t t t t t t t t t t t t t t t t t t t

## **Viewing Enclosure Topology**

This feature displays the connection topology of the Vess R3600 subsystem. Topology refers to the manner in

which the data paths among the enclosures are connected. There are three methods:

- Individual Subsystem A single subsystem
- JBOD Expansion Managed through one subsystem or head unit
- RAID Subsystem Cascading Managed through one subsystem or head unit

To view enclosure topology:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Topology** icon.

The topology or data connections of your system displays.

### **Viewing Enclosure Information**

To view enclosure information:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- Click the Enclosure and select View in the gear icon to view detailed information in a new menu.
   Enclosure information includes:
- Enclosure ID
- Enclosure Type
- Operational Status of PSUs
- Operational Status of Fans, including Current
   Fan Speed and Healthy Threshold
- Temperature Sensors for Controllers, PSUs and Backplane include Location, Status and current Temperature, and Healthy Threshold
- Voltage Sensors for Controllers and PSUs, including Sensor Type, Current Voltage, and Healthy Threshold

### **Viewing Power Supply Status**

To view the status of the power supplies and the fans that cool those power supplies:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- 3. Click the Enclosure and click the **View** button to view detailed information in a new menu.
- 4. Scroll down to view the power supplies.

The screen displays the operational and fan status of the power supplies. If any status differs from normal or the fan speed is below the Healthy Threshold value, a malfunction is indicated in the Status column.

## Locating an Enclosure

To locate an enclosure:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- 3. Click the Enclosure you want, then click the **Locate** button.

The enclosure LEDs blink for one minute.

#### Making Controller Settings

In a dual-controller RAID subsystem, settings made to one controller are applied to both controllers.

To make controller settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- 3. For the controller you want to configure, then click the Gear icon and select the Settings option.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - Enter, change or delete the alias in the Alias field.
  - **HDD Power Saving** Choose time periods from the drop-down menus. After an HDD has been idle for the set period of time:
    - \* **Power Saving Idle Time** Parks the read/write heads.
    - \* **Power Saving Standby Time** Lowers disk rotation speed.
    - \* Power Saving Stopped Time Spins down the disk (stops rotation).
  - Coercion Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - **Coercion Method** Choose a method from the drop-down menu:
    - \* GBTruncate
    - \* 10GBTruncate
    - \* GrpRounding
    - \* TableRounding
  - Write Back Cache Flush Interval Enter a value into the field, 1 to 12 seconds.
  - Enclosure Polling Interval Enter a value into the field, 15 to 255 seconds.
  - Adaptive Writeback Cache Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - Host Cache Flushing Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - Forced Read Ahead (cache) Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - **SMART Log** Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - SSD Trim Support Check the box to enable or uncheck to disable.
  - SMART Polling Interval Enter a value into the field, 1 to 1440 minutes
  - **Pseudo Device Type** From the drop-down menu, choose:
    - \* DAS
    - \* CTRL
- 5. Click the Save button.

## **Viewing Controller Information**

To view controller information:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- 3. Click the controller you want, then click the **View** button.

Basic controller information includes:

- Controller ID
- Alias If assigned
- Readiness Status
- Power On Time
- LUN Mapping method
- Serial Number
- WWN World Wide Name
- Dirty Cache Usage Percentage
- Boot Loader Version
- Firmware Version
- Software Version

- Operational Status
- SCSI Protocol Supported
- Part Number
- Hardware Revision
- Cache Usage Percentage
- Host Cache Flushing
- Boot Loader Build Date
- Firmware Build Date
- Software Build Date

Advanced controller information includes:

- Slot 1 Memory Type
- Slot 2 Memory Type
- M.2 Device Present 1
- LUN Affinity
- Controller Role
- Flash Size
- NVRAM Size
- Coercion \*
- SMART Log
- Write Back Cache Flush Interval \*
- Adaptive Writeback Cache \*
- Forced Read Ahead (cache) \*
- Power Saving Idle Time \*
- Power Saving Stopped Time
- SSD Trim Support:

- Slot 1 Memory Size
- Slot 2 Memory Size
- M.2 Device Size 1
- ALUA \*
- Flash Type
- NVRAM Type
- Preferred Cache Line Size
- Coercion Method \*
- SMART Polling Interval \*
- Enclosure Polling Interval \*
- Forced Read Ahead
- Power Saving Standby Time
- Cache Line Size
- Pseudo Device Type

Items with an asterisk (\*) are adjustable under Controller Settings.

### **Buzzer Settings**

To make buzzer settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Component List** icon.
- 3. Choose the *Enable Buzzer / Disable Buzzer* option to enable or disable the buzzer.
- 4. Choose the Turn on Buzzer / Turn off Buzzer option to turn the buzzer on or off. Note that while the buzzer

is on, the status reads Sounding; when the buzzer is off, the status reads Silent.



#### Caution

If you disable the buzzer, it is disabled for all events. To stop the buzzer from sounding, you can use either the Mute Alarm button located on the front of the subsystem hardware, or follow the instructions below.

#### **Silencing the Buzzer**

To silence the buzzer, you can press the Mute Alarm button on the front of the Vess enclosure hardware, located on the left side under the power button and USB ports. Or, click on the virtual Mute Buzzer button at the top of the user interface in WebPAM PROe. *This only appears when the buzzer is sounding.* 

## **Managing Physical Drives**

#### Viewing Physical Drive Information

To view physical drive information:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Physical Drive** icon. Information for each drive is listed in the menu.

Physical drive information includes:

- Physical Drive ID ID number of the physical drive
- Operational Status OK is normal, Stale, PFA, Dead
- Model Number- Make and model of the drive
- Drive Interface Type SATA or SAS
- Location Enclosure number and slot number
- Configuration Status Pool number or spare number
- Physical Capacity Total capacity in TB

#### Making Global Physical Drive Settings

To make global physical drive settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Physical Drive** icon.
- 3. Click the Global Physical Drive Settings button.
- 4. Check the boxes to enable, uncheck to disable.

For SATA drives:

- Enable Write Cache
- Enable Read Look Ahead Cache
- DMA Mode (use pull down menu to select option)
- Medium Error Threshold (Default is 64, range is 0-4294967294)

For SAS drives:

- Enable Write Cache
- Enable Read Look Ahead Cache
- Enable Read Cache
- Medium Error Threshold
- 5. Click the **Save** button.

## **Managing UPS Units**

#### Viewing UPS Information

To view information about a specific UPS unit:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **UPS** icon.

UPS information includes:

- UPS ID
- Status
- Model
- **Battery Capacity** Backup capacity expressed as a percentage.
- Run Time Remaining

#### Making UPS Settings

These settings control how the Vess R3600 subsystem detects the UPS unit and responds to data reported by

the UPS unit.

To make UPS settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the UPS icon.
- 3. Click the **UPS Settings** button.
- 4. Perform the following actions as required:
  - Choose a Detection Setting from the drop-down menu:
    - \* **Auto** Default. If a UPS is detected when the subsystem boots, the setting changes to Enable.
    - \* Enable Monitors UPS. Reports warnings and logs events.
    - \* Disable Does not monitor UPS.
  - Type values into the Threshold fields:
    - \* **Running Time Remaining Threshold** Actual time below this value resets adaptive writeback cache to writethrough. Default is 5 minutes, range is 3-20 minutes.
  - For UPS units with network cards, type the IP addresses or DNS names in fields UPS 1 and UPS 2. *See Note 2*.
- 5. Press **Submit** to save your settings.

**Note 1:** Vess R3600 supports multiple UPS units using network or USB connections, but not a combination of both methods.

Note 2: To specify UPS units by DNS names, ask your IT administrator to add the DNS names to

the DNS server, before you make UPS settings. DNS settings must first be configured in **Network** 

Management using the Global Settings menu.

# **MANAGING INITIATORS**

### Adding a Fibre Channel or iSCSI Initiator

You must add an initiator to the Vess R3600's initiator list in order to map your LUN or logical drive to the initiator.

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To add a Fibre Channel or iSCSI initiator to the list:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Initiator icon.
- 3. Click the **Add Initiator** button.
- 4. Choose the network Type (FC or iSCSI)
- 5. Input the initiator name in the fields provided.

A Fibre Channel initiator name is the World Wide Port Name of the initiator, composed of a series of eight, two-digit hexadecimal numbers. The iSCSI initiator name is composed of a single text string.

6. Click the **Submit** button.

The initiator is added.

## **Viewing Initiators**

The Vess R3600's initiator list displays initiators available for mapping to a LUN or logical drive. You must add

initiators to the Vess R3600's initiator list to make them available for mapping to a LUN.

To view a list of initiators:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Initiator icon.

The list of initiators appears. Initiator information includes:

- ID Initiator 0, Initiator 1, Initiator 2, etc.
- Type Choose FC or iSCSI
   Fibre Channel WWPN: Enter the World Wide Port Name of the initiator, composed of a series of eight, two-digit hexadecimal numbers.

**iSCSI** – Name: Enter the iSCSI name of the initiator device, composed of a single text string.

#### **Deleting an Initiator**



#### Caution

If you delete an initiator, you delete the LUN map associated with that initiator. Verify that the LUN map is no longer needed before deleting the initiator

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To delete a Fibre Channel initiator:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Initiator icon.
- 3. Click the trash can icon on the initiator if you want to delete it.
- 4. In the Confirmation box, type the word "confirm" in the field provided and click the Confirm button

The initiator is removed from Vess R3600's initiator list.

## **MANAGEING TARGETS**

#### Adding a Fibre Channel or iSCSI Target

You must add an target to the Vess R3600's target list in order to map your LUN or logical drive to the target.

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To add a Fibre Channel or iSCSI target to the list:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Target** icon.
- 3. Click the Add Target button.
- 4. Input the target name in the fields provided.

A Fibre Channel target name is the World Wide Port Name of the target, composed of a series of eight,

two-digit hexadecimal numbers. The iSCSI target name is composed of a single text string.

5. Click the **Submit** button.

The target is added.

#### Add Target

Go Back Add Target	
ad a new target.	
* WWNN:	
	WWNN format like this: 'ab-01-23-cd-45-67-89-ef',every inputed character should be'a~f' or '0~9'.
	Submit Reset Cancel

### **Viewing Target**

The Vess R3600's target list displays targets available for mapping to a LUN or logical drive. You must add

targets to the Vess R3600's target list to make them available for mapping to a LUN.

To view a list of targets:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **Target** icon.

The list of targets appears. Target information includes:

- ID Target 0, Target 1, Target 2, etc.
- Type

**Fibre Channel** – WWPN: Enter the World Wide Port Name of the target, composed of a series of eight, two-digit hexadecimal numbers.

**iSCSI** – Name: Enter the iSCSI name of the target device, composed of a single text string.

#### **Deleting an Target**



#### Caution

If you delete an target, you delete the LUN map associated with that target. Verify that the LUN map is no longer needed before deleting the target

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To delete a Fibre Channel target:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Target icon.
- 3. Click the trash can icon on the target if you want to delete it.
- 4. In the Confirmation box, type the word "confirm" in the field provided and click the Confirm button

The target is removed from Vess R3600's target list.

## **Network Management**

Network settings includes IP settings, physical port settings, management and IO port settings, including the option to allow IO on management ports. By default, Subsystem Management is enabled

#### Management Portal list

Device	番 Home	/ Device / Network M	anagement /	Portal / Management Por	tal				
Overview	Man	agement Po	ortal <sup>®</sup>						
Device View	Display a	summary of Subsystem	Management II	Ps and Controller Managen	nent IPs. View de	tail information, chang	e configurati	on for a specific Subsys	stem
Component List	Managem	ent IP or a specific Cont	roller Manager	nent IP.					
Physical Drive	View	Modify Enable	Disable						
🖶 UPS	Subsy	/stem Managem	ent IP						
Initiator		Controller ID	Port ID	Protocol Family	IP Address	IP Mask		Link Status	
📲 Target		2	1	IPv4 (Enabled)	192.168.201	.29 255.255.2	255.0	Up	<b>0</b> -
A Network Management		2	1	IPv6 (Disabled)	fd00::1	ff00::		Up	<b>0</b> -
Port <	•								
Trunk	Contr	oller Manageme	nt IP						
Portal ×		Controller ID	Port	ID Protocol Fam	ily	IP Address	IP Mask		
Management		2	1	IPv4 (Enable	d)	10.0.0.3	255.255.	255.0	<b>Q</b> -
Portal		2	1	IPv6 (Disable	ed)	fd00::3	ff00::		<b>\$</b> -
IO Portal									
Global Settings									
👯 FC Management									

### **Making Management IP Settings**

Use the Management Portal menu to view, change, enable or disable IP settings for the Subsystem and

Controller management. To change management IP settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Portal and click on Management Portal.

IPv4 is enabled by default for Subsystem Management and Controller Management IP.

To enable IPv6, click to select the IPv6 configuration set for Subsystem Management IP or Controller

Management IP, and click on the Enable button.

- To disable a management portal configuration, click to select it and click on the **Disable** button.
- To enable a management portal configuration, click to select it and click on the **Enable** button.
- 3. To change IP setting for Subsystem Management or Controller Management IP, click to select the

configuration you want to change, and click on the **Modify** button.

- Check the **Enable DHCP** box to enable a DHCP server to make your network settings. DHCP is currently supported in IPv4 only. Note that you will have the option to enable Auto DNS.
- For manual network settings, type the RAID subsystem's IP address, subnet mask and gateway IP address into the fields provided.
- 4. Click the **Save** button.

### **Viewing Management IP Settings**

Use the Management Portal menu to view, change, enable or disable IP settings for the Subsystem and Controller management. To view management IP settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Portal and click on Management Portal.
- 3. To view IP setting for **Subsystem Management** or **Controller Management IP**, click to select the configuration you want to view, and click on the **View** button.

#### View Subsystem Management IP Configuration

Home / Device / Network	Management / Portal / Management	Portal / Subsystem Management IP Con	figuration
« Go Back Subsyste	em Management II	P Configuration $^{\odot}$	
Display the detail configuration	or the virtual management port.		
Protocol Family:	IPv4(Enabled)	Active Controller ID:	2
Port ID:	1	Max Supported Speed:	100Mbps
Link Status:	Up	DHCP:	Enabled
IP Address:	192.168.201.29	IP Mask:	255.255.255.0
Gateway:	192.168.201.254	MAC:	00:01:55:62:8c:98

### **Making IO Portal Settings**

Use the IO Portal menu to view, change, enable or disable IP settings for the IO Ports. To change IO port IP

settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Portal and click on IO Portal.
- 3. To change IO Portal settings, click to select the configuration you want to change, and click on the Modify

button.

- Check the **Enable DHCP** box to enable a DHCP server to make the IO port network settings. DHCP is currently supported in IPv4 only.
- For manual network settings, type the IO Port IP address, subnet mask and gateway IP address into the fields provided.
- Enter a **TCP Port Number** or use the default 3260.
- 4. Click the **Save** button.

IO Portal Co	onfiguration
--------------	--------------

Go Back Modify IO P Change a portal's IP settings.	ortal <sup>©</sup>
Port ID:	3
Controller ID:	1
* TCP Port Number [1025~65535]:	3260
* IP Type:	IPv4
DHCP:	
* IP Address:	10.0.30.1
* Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
Gateway:	10.0.30.254
	Save Reset Cancel

### **Viewing IO Portal Settings**

Use the IO Portal menu to view, change, enable or disable IP settings for the IO Ports. To view IO port IP settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Portal and click on IO Portal.
- To change IO Portal settings, click to select the configuration you want to view, and click on the View button.

#### **IO Portal Information**

Home / Device / Network Management / Portal / IO Portal / IO Portal Detail Information				
Go Back IO PO				
ID:	2	Controller ID:	1	
Port ID:	3	TCP Port Number:	3260	
Status:	Inactive	IP Туре:	IPv4	
DHCP:	Disabled	Interface Type:	Physical	
Port Type:	IO Port	Second Route:	Disabled	
Interface Name:	3	IP Address:	10.0.30.1	
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	Assign iSCSI Targets:	0	
Gateway:	10.0.30.254			

### **Making Global IP Settings**

Use the Global Settings menu to select the default route used for system management; this menu also includes

the option to enable IO on management ports.

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab and click on Global Settings.
- 3. To change Global IP settings, click to select the configuration you want to change, and click on the Modify

button.

- Choose the Default Route option that best suits the application used: *Subsystem Management IP, Controller Management IP* or *IO Portal.*
- Check the **Auto DNS** box to use the DNS administered by DHCP. *This* requires DHCP be enabled in the Management Portal IP Settings.
- If you are not using DHCP, specify a DNS IP Address, and a Secondary DNS IP Address (optional).
- (Optional) Check Wake On LAN if you want to enable this feature.
- (Optional) IO can be enabled through Management Ports. Check the box to enable this feature.
- 4. Click the Save button.

#### **Global IP Settings**

# Home / Device / Network Management / Global Settings						
Global Settings <sup>®</sup>						
Configure global parameters, like default route, auto DNS, DNS IP address etc.						
* Default Route:	Subsystem Management IP     Controller Management IP					
	O IO Portal					
Auto DNS:						
* DNS IP Address:	0.0.0					
Secondary DNS IP Address:	0.0.0					
Wake On LAN:						
Enable IO on Management Ports:						
	Save Reset					

### **Making Trunk Settings**

Two or more IO ports can be used to create a Trunk Port (link aggregation) in order to increase throughput capacity. In order to do this, it is necessary to delete at least two IO portals in the **IO Portal** menu. Then the physical ports can be aggregated to form a single portal. However, before creating the IO Trunk, it is necessary to first delete all the portals on the IO ports that will make up the IO Trunk.

To delete IO Portals on ports to be used for the IO Trunk:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab > **Network Management > Portal.**
- 2. Click the IO Portal or Management Portal menu link.
- 3. Click to select the ports to be used for the Trunk.
- 4. Click the **Delete** button. It is necessary to confirm that you want to delete the portals.
- 5. In the new menu, type "Confirm" and click on the Confirm button to delete the portals. The ports can now be used for Trunk.

						www.com.com.com.com.com.com.com.com.com.com				
Device	W Home / Device / Network Management / Portal / IO Portal									
Overview	IO Portal <sup>®</sup>									
Device View	Display a	summai	∿y of all IO po	ortals, view o	letailed infe	ormation of a sp	ecific portal, create, ch	ange or delete a specifi	ic portal, ping a hos	at or server.
Component List	Add IC	D Portal	View	Modify	Delete	e Ping				
Physical Drive		ID	Controller	ID P	Port ID	IP Address	Interface Type	Status	Port Type	
T UPS		0	1	1		10.21.10.1	Physical	Active (Ctrl 1)	IO Port	<b>0</b> -
Initiator		1	1	2		10.21.20.1	Physical	Active (Ctrl 1)	IO Port	8.
Normal Target		2	2	1		10 21 30 1	Physical	Active (Ctrl 2)	IO Port	
🔏 Network Management \vee		2	-			10 21 40 1	Physical	Active (Ctrl 2)	IO Port	
Port <		Ŭ	2	-		10.21.40.1	Filyalcal	Active (our 2)	IO POIL	- ***
Trunk										
Portal ×										
Management Portal										
IO Portal										
Global Settings										

#### Delete IO Portal for Trunk

#### Create IO Trunk

Two or more IO ports can be used to create a Trunk Port (link aggregation) in order to increase throughput capacity. In order to do this, it is necessary to delete at least two IO portals in the **IO Portal** menu. Then the physical ports can be aggregated to form a single portal. However, before creating the IO Trunk, it is necessary to first delete all the portals on the IO ports that will make up the IO Trunk.

To delete IO Portals on ports to be used for the IO Trunk:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab > **Network Management** > **Trunk.**
- 2. Click the **Add Trunk** button.
- 3. Click to select the ports to be used for the Trunk.
- 4. Click to select the **Trunk Type**: *Balance XOR, LACP* or *Active-Standby*
- 5. Choose the Controller where the Trunk is created and determine which port is Master Port.
- 6. Click on the **Submit** button to create the new Trunk.

#### Add Trunk menu

Active-Standby   Port Type:  Active-Standby  Output Description De	Active-Standby Port Type:  Management Port IO Port Introller ID: Controller 1 Controller 2 Iaster Port: Port 1 V Iave Ports: Port 2	* Trunk Type:	Balance XOR LACP
Port Type:      Management Port IO Port     Controller ID: Controller 1 Controller 2     Master Port: Port 1     Slave Ports: Port 2	Port Type:   Management Port  IO Port Introller ID: Controller 1  Controller 2 Iaster Port: Port 1  Value Ports: Port 2		Active-Standby
Controller ID: Controller 1 Controller 2     Master Port: Port 1     Slave Ports: Port 2	Introller ID: Controller 1 Controller 2 Iaster Port: Port 1 Iave Ports: Port 2	* Port Type:	Management Port IO Port
Master Port: Port 1     Slave Ports: Port 2	laster Port: Port 1 view Ports: Port 2	* Controller ID:	Controller 1 O Controller 2
* Slave Ports: Port 2	lave Ports: Port 2	* Master Port:	Port 1
		* Slave Ports:	Port 2
-			

### **Viewing Port Information**

To view physical port information for IO or Management ports:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Port and click on Management Port or IO Port.
- 3. Select the port to view information and click on View.

#### Management Port Information

A Home / Device / Network Management / Port / Management Port / View					
« Go Back Management Port Information <sup>(2)</sup>					
Display Management Port de	etan mormation.				
Controller ID:	2	Port ID:	1		
Jumbo Frame:	Disabled	Port Status:	Enabled		
Link Status:	Enabled	MAC:	00:01:55:62:8C:98		
Max Support Speed:	1000 Mbps	Current Speed:	100 Mbps		
Assigned IO Portals:	N/A				

### **Making Port Settings**

To view physical port information for IO or Management ports:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab, expand Port and click on Management Port or IO Port.
- 3. Select the port to change settings and click on **Modify**.
- 4. Click to enable or disable Jumbo Frame on the port.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.

#### Making Maintenance Mode Settings

Each controller has its own IP addresses for access when the controller goes into maintenance mode.

To make maintenance mode settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Network Management tab.
- 3. Click the Management Portal tab.
- 4. For maintenance mode, use the **Static IP** settings.
- 5. Click the controller and protocol family whose settings you want to change and click the **Configuration** button.
- 6. Make the following settings are needed:
  - Check the **Enable** box to enable this protocol family.
  - Check the **Enable DHCP** box to enable a DHCP server to make your network settings. DHCP is currently supported in IPv4 only.
  - For manual network settings, type the **IP address, subnet mask, gateway IP address**, and **DNS server IP address** into the fields provided.
- 7. Click the **Submit** button.

#### Making Maintenance Mode Port Settings

The IP settings of management ports are also configured in Network Management.

To make physical management port settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Management Portal icon.
- 3. Under Static IP, click on the gear icon and choose the *Modify* option.
- 4. In the new menu, make the following settings are needed:
  - Check the **Enable DHCP** box to enable a DHCP server to make your network settings. DHCP is currently supported in IPv4 only. Note that you will have the option to enable Auto DNS.
  - For manual network settings, type the RAID subsystem's IP address, subnet mask and gateway IP address into the fields provided.
  - You can choose to Enable Physical IP.
- 5. Click the Save button.

### **Managing Fibre Channel Connections**

#### Viewing Fibre Channel Node Information

To view Fibre Channel node information:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the FC Management tab.
- 3. Click the **Node** tab.

Node information includes:

- Worldwide Node Name (WWNN)
- Maximum Frame Size
- Supported Fibre Channel Class
- Supported Speed

#### Fibre Channel Node Information

≡	Device	A Home / Device / FC Management	/ Node		
🚯 Dashboard	Overview	Node <sup>⑦</sup>			
📾 Pool	Contract View	Display FC Node detail information.			
Se Volume	Component List	FC Node Information			
NAS Share	Physical Drive				
	■ UPS	WWNN:	25-01-00-01-55-62-8c-97		
INAS Account	Initiator	Supported FC Class:	Class Of Service 3		
E Device	™a Target	Max Frame Size:	2048		
F Administration	A Network Management	Supported Speed:	16Gb/s, 8Gb/s, 4Gb/s		
	## FC Management V				
	Node				
	Port				
	Statistics				
	Logged In Initiator				
	Logged In Target				
	Device on Fabric				
	SFP				
Management with WebPAM PROe

### Viewing Fibre Channel Port Information

To view Fibre Channel port information:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the FC Management tab.
- 3. Click the **Port** tab.
- 4. Click the gear icon in the list of FC ports and select the *View* option.

Port information includes:

- Controller ID
- Link Status
- Topology
- Alias WWNN World Wide Node Name
- Fabric WWPN
- Current Speed
- Configured Link Speed
- Hard ALPA

- Port ID:
- Identifier (hexadecimal)
- WWPN Worldwide Port Name
- Number Of Current Aliases
- Fabric WWNN
- Link Type
- Configured Topology

#### Making Fibre Channel Port Settings

To make Fibre Channel port settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the FC Management tab.
- 3. Click the **Port** tab.
- 4. Click the gear icon in the list of FC ports and select the *Modify* option.
- 5. Make these changes as required:
  - Choose a configured link speed from the drop-down menu. The choices are Auto (default), 4 Gb/s, 8 Gb/s and 16 Gb/s.
  - Choose a topology from the drop-down menu.
  - Enter a Hard ALPA in the field provided. Enter 255 to disable Hard ALPA.
- 6. Click the **Save** button.

#### Fibre Channel Node Information

Device	番 Home / Device / FC Management /	Port / FC Port Settings		
Overview	« Go Back FC Port Settings			
C Device View	Configure FC port speed, topology and Ha	ard ALPA.		
Component List				
Physical Drive	* Configured Link Speed:	Auto	•	
UPS	* Configured Topology:	Auto		
Initiator	* Hard ALPA [0-255]:	224		
* Target		Save Peret Cancel		
A Network Management		Save neset Cancer		
HI FC Management				
Node				
Port				
Statistics				
Logged In Initiator				
Logged In Target				
Device on Fabric				
055				

### Port Setting Information

The examples below show the type of attached topology you achieve based on your connection type and the configured topology you select.

Example 1: If you connect the Vess R3600 to a Fibre Channel switch and choose NL-Port topology, you create

a Public Loop attached topology.

Example 2: If you have a Point-to-Point attached topology, you made a direct connection (no Fibre Channel switch) and selected N-port topology.



In some cases, HBA settings to N-Port only work if connected to the switch. Refer to your HBA manual for more information.

### Viewing Fibre Channel Port Statistics

To view Fibre Channel port statistics:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the FC Management tab.
- 3. Click the **Statistics** tab.
- 4. Click the gear icon in the list of FC ports and select the *View* option.

### Viewing Fibre Channel Logged-in Devices

Logged-in devices refers to all Fibre Channel devices currently logged into the Vess R3600. The device list includes:

- Fibre Channel ports
- Fibre Channel switches, if attached
- Fibre Channel initiators

To view a list Fibre Channel logged-in devices:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Fibre Channel Management icon.
- 3. Click the **Logged In Device** tab.

To add a Fibre Channel initiator in the list, select it and click on the Add to Initiator List button. This is the

method described in "Adding a Fibre Channel or iSCSI Initiator" on page 110.

#### Fibre Channel Logged In Initiators

♣ Home Log( Display a	Home / Device / FC Management / Logged In Initiator     Dogged In Initiator     O Display a summary of all logged in Initiators. Add a specific initiator into initiator list.						
View	View Add to Initiator List						
	Controller ID	Port ID	FCID	WWPN	WWNN	NPIV	
	2	1	0x000001	26-01-00-01-55-5d-82-b1	25-00-00-01-55-5d-82-b1		
	2	3	0x000001	26-00-00-01-55-5d-82-b1	25-00-00-01-55-5d-82-b1		

### Viewing Fibre Channel Initiators on the Fabric

To view a list Fibre Channel initiators on the fabric:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the FC Management tab.
- 3. Click the **Device on Fabric** tab.

Also see "Viewing Initiators" on page 111.

To add a Fibre Channel initiator in the list, select it and click on the **Add to Initiator List** button. See "Adding a Fibre Channel or iSCSI Initiator" on page 110.

### Viewing Fibre Channel SFPs

The term SFP refers to Small Form Pluggable transceivers used in Fibre Channel ports. The SFPs convert electrical signals to optical signals and send them over the Fibre Channel fabric, where another transceiver converts the optical signal back to an electrical signal again.

To view a list Fibre Channel SFPs:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the Fibre Channel Management icon.
- 3. Click the SFP tab.

SFP information includes:

- Controller ID
- FC Port ID
- Connector type
- Transceiver type
- Transceiver code
- Vendor name

# MANAGING ISCSI CONNECTIONS

## Viewing iSCSI Target Information

To view information about the iSCSI target:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **Target** tab. (Note that you need to click *Expand Detail Information* to view the entire list)

Target information includes:

- **ID** ID number of the target.
- Status Up or down.
- Name iSCSI qualified name (iqn) of this target.
- Alias Maximum of 32 characters. Use letters, numbers, space between words, and underscore. An alias is optional.\*
- Error Recovery Level Error recovery level supported.
- Initial R2T Allows initiator to begin sending data to a target without receiving a ready to transfer command.
- **Max Outstanding R2T** Maximum number of R2T PDUs the target can have outstanding for a single iSCSI command.
- Max Burst Length Maximum length of a solicited data sequence in bytes.
- Data Digest Adds a data digest (CRC).\*
- Header Digest Enables the use of header digest (CRC).\*
- Data PDU in Order Enables placement of data in PDU order
- Data Sequence in Order Enables placement of data in sequence order
- Default Time to Wait After a dropped connection, the number of seconds to wait before attempting to reconnect
- **Default Time to Retain** Number of seconds after time to wait (above) before reassigning outstanding commands
- Uni-directional CHAP Authentication Uni-directional (peer) CHAP authentication, enabled or disabled\*
- **Bi-directional CHAP Authentication** Bi-directional (local) CHAP authentication, enabled or disabled\*
- Maximum Connections The maximum number of concurrent connections
- Immediate Data Enables the initiator to send unsolicited data with the iSCSI command PDU.
- First Burst Length In bytes.
- Assigned Portal IDs
- Keep Alive Enable or Disable

# Making iSCSI Target Settings

To make target settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **Target** tab.
- 4. Click the target you want, then click the **Modify** button.
- 5. Make settings changes are required:
  - Alias
  - Enable/Disable Keep Alive
  - Enable/Disable Header Digest
  - Enable Data Digest
  - Enable Bi-directional CHAP Authentication
  - Enable Uni-directional CHAP Authentication
- 6. Click the Save button.

### Viewing a List of iSCSI Sessions

To view a list of iSCSI sessions:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **Session** tab.

iSCSI session information includes:

- **ID** ID number of the session
- Controller ID Controller 1 or 2
- Target Alias Alias of the target
- Initiator Alias Part of the IQN
- **IO Portal ID** ID number of the portal
- IO Portal IP IP address of the portal
- **Status** Active or inactive.

## Viewing iSCSI Session Information

To view a list of iSCSI sessions:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **iSCSI Management** icon.
- 3. Click the **Session** tab.
- 4. Click the View button.

# **Deleting an iSCSI Session**

To delete an iSCSI session:

- 1. Click the Device tab.
- 2. Click the **iSCSI Management** icon.
- 3. Click the **Session** tab.
- 4. Click the iSCSI session you want and click the **Delete** button.
- 5. Type "**confirm**" in the field provided, then click the **Confirm** button.

### Viewing iSCSI iSNS Information

To view information about iSNS:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **iSNS** tab.

The information includes:

- IO Portal ID
- Type
- Controller
- Status
- Server IP
- Server Port

# Making iSCSI iSNS Settings

To make iSNS settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **iSNS** tab.
- 4. Click on a portal to select it.
- 5. Click the **Modify** button.
- 6. Make settings changes are required:
  - Enable (check to enable)
  - Server Port (1-65535)
  - Server IP
  - IO Portal ID
- 7. Click the **Submit** button.

## Viewing a List of iSCSI CHAPs

To view a list of iSCSI CHAPs:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **CHAP** tab.

CHAP information includes:

- ID ID number of the CHAP
- Type Peer or local
   Peer is one-way or uni-directional.
   Local is two-way or bi-directional.
- Name User assigned name of the CHAP

# Adding iSCSI CHAPs

To add an iSCSI CHAP:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the **iSCSI Management** icon.
- 3. Click the CHAP tab.
- 4. Click the Create CHAP button.
- 5. Make your choices and inputs as required:
  - Enter a name in the Name field.
  - Choose a CHAP type.
     Peer is one-way or uni-directional.
     Local is two-way or bi-directional.
  - Enter a secret of 12 to 16 characters in the Secret field.
  - Enter the secret again in the Retype Secret field.
- 6. Click the **Submit** button.

The new CHAP is added to the list.

# **Deleting iSCSI CHAPs**

To delete an iSCSI CHAP:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **CHAP** tab.
- 4. Click the CHAP you want, then click the **Delete** button.
- 5. Type "CONFIRM" into the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

The CHAP is removed from the list.

# Making iSCSI CHAP Settings

When you change CHAP settings, you must change the secret. You cannot change the type (peer or local).

To make iSCSI CHAP settings:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the **CHAP** tab.
- 4. Click the CHAP you want, then click the **Modify** button.
- 5. Make settings changes are required:
  - Enter a name in the Name field.
  - Enter the current secret in the Current Secret field.
  - Enter a new secret of 12 to 16 characters in the Secret field.
  - Enter the new secret again in the Retype Secret field.
- 6. Click the **Save** button.

# Viewing a List of Logged-in Devices

Logged-in devices refers to all iSCSI devices currently logged into the Vess R3600. The device list includes:

To view a list of logged-in devices:

- 1. Click the **Device** tab.
- 2. Click the iSCSI Management icon.
- 3. Click the Logged In Device tab.

# Using the Event Viewer

The Event Viewer displays log of subsystem events. Events are classified as:

 Runtime Events – A list of and information of up to about 300,000 of the most recent runtime events recorded since the subsystem was started.

Event Severity Levels				
Level	Description			
Fatal	Non-recoverable error or failure has occurred.			
Critical	Action is needed now and the implications of the condition are serious.			
Major	Action is needed now.			
Minor	Action is needed but the condition is not a serious at this time.			
Warning	User can decide whether or not action is required.			
Information	Information only, no action is required.			

### Viewing Events

To display Events:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Events** icon.

The log of Events appears. Events are added to the top of the list. Each item includes:

- Index number Begins with 0 at system startup.
- Device Disk Array, Logical Drive, Physical Drive by its ID number.
- Event ID Hexadecimal code for the specific event
- Severity see table on previous page
- **Time** Date and time the event happened.
- **Description** A description of the event in plain language.
- 3. Press the up and down arrow keys to scroll through the log. Choose the page size and event log page you want to view.

#### Saving Events

This feature saves a plain text file of runtime events to your host PC or server using your browser.

To save the Events log:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the **Events** icon.
- 3. Click the Save button.
- 4. Follow your browser's procedure to save the event file to the desired location.

### **Clearing Events**

To clear the Events log:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the Events icon.
- 3. Click the **Clear** button.
- 4. In the Confirmation box, type the word "**confirm**" in the field provided and click the Confirm button.

# **MANAGING USERS**

# **Viewing User Information**

To view user information:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab.

The list of users displays. User information includes:

- User name
- Display Name
- Privilege level
- Email address
- Status

# **Creating a User**

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To create a user:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab.
- 3. Click the Add New User button.
- 4. In the **Add User** dialog box, enter the information in the fields provided:
  - Name This is the user's login name
  - Display Name
  - Password
  - Retype Password
  - User Email Required for event notification
  - Enable this user Check box to enable the user. Click to remove check to disable.
  - Privilege Use pull down menu to select *View, Maintenance, Power*, or *Super* user level. See the table below for a description of the privilege types.
- 5. Click the **Submit** button. The user is added to the list.

User Privileges			
Level	Meaning		
View	Allows the user to See all status and settings but not to make any changes		
Maintenance	Allows the user to perform maintenance tasks including Rebuilding, PDM, Media Patrol, and Redundancy Check		
Power	Allows the user to create (but not delete) disk arrays and logical drives, change RAID levels, change stripe size; change settings of components such as disk arrays, logical drives, physical drives, and the controller		
Super	Allows the user full access to all functions including create and delete users and changing the settings of other users, and delete disk arrays and logical drives. The default "administrator" account is a <b>Super User</b>		

# **Making User Settings**

This action requires **Administrator** or a **Super User** privileges.

To make user settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Management User** tab.
- 3. In the User list, click the user you want, then click the gear icon and select the *Modify* option.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - For the Enable box, check to enable this user account, uncheck to disable this user account
  - In the User Settings dialog box, enter a new **Display Name** or **User Email** address
  - Choose a new **Privilege** level from the drop-down menu. See the table on the next page.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.

# **Changing User Passwords**

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To change a user's password:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the User Management icon.
- 3. In the User list, click the user you want, then click Change Password.
- 4. In the Change Password dialog box, enter the information in the fields provided:
  - New Password
  - Retype Password
- 5. Click the **Save** button.

# **Deleting a User**

This action requires Administrator or Super User privileges

To delete a user:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the User Management icon.
- 3. In the User list, click the user you want, then click the **Delete** button.
- 4. In the **Confirmation** box, type the word "**confirm**" in the field provided and click the **Confirm** button.



#### Note

The Administrator account cannot be deleted.

# **Setting User Event Subscriptions**

By default, all users have event notification:

- Enabled
- Set to the Major (severity) level for all events

Subscribing users receive notification of events at the chosen severity level and all higher levels.



#### Note

Each user must have a valid Email address to receive events.

Changing a user subscription requires Administrator or Super User privileges.

To set a user event subscription:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Management User tab.
- 3. In the User list, click the user you want, then click the **Subscription** button.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - For the Enable Event Notification box, check to enable for this user, uncheck to disable.
  - Click to change the priority options for each category of event.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.

# **Viewing Services**

This feature displays all software services running on the RAID subsystem.

To view the list of software services:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Service icon.

The Services list displays the Status and Start Type of the services available. These services are described in the sections that follow. To view the actions available for the various services in the list, click the gear icon for the respective service.

### Email Service

Email service enables the RAID subsystem to send you Email messages about events and status changes. By default, Email service is set to Automatic.

### Stopping Email Service

To stop the Email service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Service icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for Email service and select the *Stop* option.
- 4. Click the **Confirm** button.

To start the Email service after stopping it:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Services** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for Email service and select the Start option.

## **Restarting Email Service**

To restart the Email service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for Email service and select the *Restart* option.

## Making Email Settings

To change Email service settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for Email service and select the Settings option.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - Choose a startup type,
    - \* Automatic (default) Starts and runs with the subsystem.
    - \* Manual You start the service when you need it.
  - SMTP Server IP address
  - SMTP Server Port
  - SMTP Authentication Choose the Yes radio button to enable authentication or the *No* radio button to disable authentication.
  - Authentication Username Required if SMTP authentication is enabled.
  - Authentication Password Required if SMTP authentication is enabled.
  - Sender (From) Address The sender's name shown on notification messages.
  - Email Subject The subject line of the notification message.
- 5. To enable SSL for the connection to the Email server, check the **Enable SSL** box.
- 6. To send a test email, one time, check the **Send a Test Email** box.
- 7. Click the **Save** button.
- 8. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.



#### Note

To verify your settings, send a test message.

### SLP Service

Service Location Protocol (SLP) discovers services over the Internet. SLP applies to IPv4 protocol only.

## Stopping SLP Service

To stop the SLP service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and select the Stop option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

To start the SLP service after stopping it:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Services** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and choose the *Start* option.

### **Restarting SLP Service**

To restart the SLP service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and select the *Restart* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### Making SLP Settings

To change SLP service settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and select the Settings option.
- 4. Choose a startup type:
  - Automatic (default) Starts and runs with the subsystem.
  - Manual You start the service when you need it.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.
- 6. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### Webserver Service

Webserver service connects the WebPAM PROe interface to the RAID subsystem though your browser.

### Stopping Webserver Service

To stop the Webserver service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for Webserver service and select the *Stop* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

To start the Webserver service after stopping it:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Services icon.
- 3. Click the Webserver service and click the **Start** button.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### **Restarting Webserver Service**

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and select the *Restart* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### Making Webserver Settings

To change Webserver service settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SLP service and select the Settings option.
- 4. Make settings changes as required:
  - Choose a startup type,
    - \* Automatic (default) Starts and runs with the subsystem.
    - \* Manual You start the service when you need it.
  - Session Time Out Default is 24 minutes.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.
- 6. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### SSH Service

Secure Shell (SSH) service enables you to access the subsystem's Command Line Interface (CLI) through a network connection.

## Stopping SSH Service

To stop SSH service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SSH service and select the *Stop* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

To start SSH service after stopping it:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Services** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SSH service and select the *Start* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### **Restarting SSH Service**

To restart SSH service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Service icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SSH service and select the *Restart* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

## Making SSH Settings

To change SSH service settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Service icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SSH service and select the Settings option.
- 4. In the SSH Settings tab, make settings changes as required:
  - Choose a startup type,
    - \* Automatic (default) Starts and runs with the subsystem.
    - \* Manual You start the service when you need it.
  - Port number Default is 22.
  - Max Number of Concurrent Connections Default is 4. Maximum number is 4.
  - Session Time Out Default is 24 minutes.
- 5. Click the **Save** button.
- 6. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### SSH Public Key Management

To change SSH service settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SSH service and select the SSH Public Key Management option.
- 4. In the SSH Public Key Management menu, make settings changes as required:
  - Click the **Choose File** button and locate the file with the SSH Public Key
  - Enter a comment
  - Enter TFTP IP and file path information
- 5. Click the **Upload** button.

### **SNMP** Service

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is the long used protocol for getting information or modifying about managed devices on IP networks.

## Stopping SNMP Service

To stop SNMP service:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SNMP service and select the *Stop* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

To start SNMP service after stopping it:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Services** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SNMP service and select the *Start* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### **Restarting SNMP Service**

To restart SNMP service:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SNMP service and select the *Restart* option.
- 4. Type "CONFIRM" in the popup menu and click the **Confirm** button.

### SNMP Settings

To change SNMP settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Service** icon.
- 3. Click the gear icon for SNMP service and select the Settings option.
- 4. Required settings include:
  - Security User Name
  - Choose an Authentication Protocol (MD5, SHA)
  - Enter an Authentication Password and Retype Authentication Password
  - Choose a Privacy Protocol
  - Enter an Privacy Password and Retype Privacy Password
- 5. Click on **Submit** button to apply new settings.

Note that the **Context Engine ID** is listed in this menu.

## **Performance Monitoring**

The Vess R3600 includes menu displays for monitoring of numerous functions and parameters. However, many administrators might give priority to particular functions for monitoring. For this reason, a feature is included to allow the administrator to create a favorites list of menus for monitoring.

Performance monitoring charts are available for **Controller**, **Pool**, **Volume**, **NAS Share**, **Clone**, **Physical Drive**, **Management Port**, **IO Port**, and **FC Port**. Go to **Administrator > Performance Monitoring** and choose which menu you want to view from the expanded list. For some charts, additional parameters can be selectively viewed.

### Adding a menu to Favorites page

To add a menu to the **Favorites** page in Performance Monitoring, open the performance menu you want to add, choose the parameter to view if applicable, and click on the **Add this chart to favorites**.



#### Controller Performance chart

#### Favorite Performance Monitoring menus display



To remove a chart from the Favorite menus, click on Remove this chart.

# **MANAGING BACKGROUND ACTIVITIES**

Background activities perform a variety of preventive and remedial functions on your physical drives, disk arrays, logical drives, and other components.

You can run a background activity immediately or schedule it to run at a later time. Scheduling options are described below.

Setting options for each activity are listed after the scheduling options. These settings determine how the background activity affects I/O performance.

# **View Current Background Activities**

To view a list of current background activities:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background appears.

Currently running activities show a progress bar.

# **View Scheduled Background Activities**

To view a list of scheduled background activities:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background appears.

3. Click the **Scheduler** button.

The list of currently scheduled background activities appears.

# Add a Scheduled Background Activity

To add a new scheduled background activity:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background appears.

3. Click the **Background Activity Scheduler** button.

The list of currently scheduled background activities appears.

- 4. Click the Add Schedule button.
- 5. In the new menu, choose the option (radio button) for the activity you want:
  - Redundancy Check
  - Spare Check
- 6. Check the box to Enable This Scheduler if you want to make the schedule active. (Remove check if you

want to disable.)

7. Choose a **Start Time** from the drop-down menus.

The menus have a 24-hour clock.

- 8. Choose a Recurrence Pattern option, daily, weekly, or monthly.
  - For the Daily option, enter an interval in the Every field.
  - For the Weekly option, enter an interval in the Every field and choose one or more days of the week.
  - For the Monthly option, choose, Day of the Month option then choose a number from the drop-down menu.
     The day of the week option then choose the day of the month from the drop-down menus.
- 9. Choose a **Start From** date from the drop-down menus.
- 10. Choose an End On option,
  - No end date or perpetual.
  - End after a specific number of activity actions.
  - Until date from the drop-down menus.

- 11. For Redundancy Check, choose,
  - Auto Fix option Attempts to repair the problem when it finds an error. Check to enable
  - **Pause on Error** option The process stops when it finds a non-repairable error. Check to enable
  - Select LD Check the boxes for the logical drives to run Redundancy Check. Check at least one logical drive
- 12. Click the **Submit** button.

## Change a Background Activity Schedule

To change an existing scheduled background activity:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the Background Activities tab.

The list of background appears.

3. Click the **Scheduler** button.

The list of currently scheduled background activities appears.

- 4. Click the background activity and click the Settings button.
- 5. Make settings changes as required:
  - Choose a **Start Time** from the drop-down menus. The menus have a 24-hour clock.
  - Choose a Recurrence Pattern option, daily, weekly, or monthly.
     For the Daily option, enter an interval in the Every field.
     For the Weekly option, enter an interval in the Every field and choose one or more days of the week.

For the Monthly option, choose the Day of the Month option or the day of the week option, and choose the day from the drop-down menu.

- Choose a **Start From** date from the drop-down menus.
- Choose an End On option,

No end date or perpetual.

End after a specific number of activity actions.

Until date from the drop-down menus.

• For Redundancy Check, choose,

**Auto Fix** option – Attempts to repair the problem when it finds an error. Check to enable **Pause on Error** option – The process stops when it finds a non-repairable error. Check to enable

**Select LD** – Check the boxes for the logical drives to run Redundancy Check. Check at least one logical drive

6. Click the **Save** button.

# **Enable/Disable Scheduled Background Activity**

Background activity schedules are enabled by default when you create the schedule. If you want to stop a background activity now but plan to use it again in the future, disable the scheduled activity rather than deleting it. To enable or disable change an existing scheduled background activity:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background appears.

3. Click the **Scheduler** button.

The list of currently scheduled background activities appears.

- 4. Click the background activity and click the Settings button.
- 5. Uncheck the Enable This Schedule box to disable this schedule.

Check the box to enable this schedule.

6. Click the **Save** button.

# **Delete a Scheduled Background Activity**

To change an existing scheduled background activity:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background appears.

3. Click the **Scheduler** button.

The list of currently scheduled background activities appears.

- 4. Click the background activity and click the **Delete** button.
- 5. In the confirmation box, click the confirm button.

# **Media Patrol**

Media Patrol is a routine maintenance procedure that checks the magnetic media on each disk drive. Media Patrol checks are enabled by default on all disk arrays and spare drives. Media Patrol is concerned with the media itself, not the data recorded on the media. If Media Patrol encounters a critical error, it triggers a PDM if PDM is enabled on the disk array.

## Starting, Stopping, Pausing and Resuming Media Patrol

To make Media Patrol settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- Click the Background Activities tab.
   The list of background appears.
- 3. To begin Media Patrol, click the Start button. To Pause a running Media Patrol, click on the Gear icon and select *Pause*; click *Resume* to continue the Media Patrol. To Stop a running Media Patrol, click on the Gear icon, select *Stop*. Stopping Media Patrol requires confirmation by typing "Confirm" in the Confirmation pop up menu and clicking on the Confirm button.

#### Media Patrol actions menu

Background Activity <sup>®</sup>						
Display current background activity status, start/stop/pause/resume background activities.						
Background Activity Scheduler						
Media Patrol	Media Patrol is running. Last Media Patrol Start Time : 2018-09-21 15:49:55 Last Media Patrol Stop Time : 2018-09-20 18:40:30	Start				
PD ID Status	Completed PD IDs	Queue PD IDs				
1	Paused Current 0%, Over All 0%	2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15,16,17,18,1 9,20,29,30,31,32,33,34,35,2° 45 40 47 40				
Redundancy Check	Redundancy Check is running.	Stop				
Pool ID Pool Name	Status					

# **Redundancy Check**

Redundancy Check is a routine maintenance procedure for fault-tolerant disk arrays (those with redundancy) that ensures all the data matches exactly. Redundancy Check can also correct inconsistencies.

## Starting, Stopping, Pausing and Resuming Redundancy Check

To make Redundancy Check settings:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** tab.

The list of background activities appears.

- Use the check boxes to select the pools to run Redundancy Checks. Note that you can also enable/ disable Auto Fix and Pause on Error for each pool.
- 4. To begin Redundancy Check on existing pools, click the **Start** button. To Pause a Redundancy Check for a pool, click on the Gear icon for the pool and select *Pause*; click *Resume* to continue the Redundancy Check. To Stop a running Redundancy Check, click on the Gear icon, select *Stop*. Stopping Redundancy Check requires confirmation by typing "Confirm" in the Confirmation pop up menu and clicking on the **Confirm** button.

Redundancy (	Check Redund	lancy Check is running.		Start
Pool ID	Pool Name	Status		
1	R1_c2(RAID1)		Running 54%	Ø-
2	R5_c1(RAID5)		Running 32% P	ause
3	R6_c2(RAID6)		Running 36%	itop
4	R10_c1(RAID10)		Running 69%	<b>\$</b> -
5	R50_c2(RAID50)		Running 38%	<b>٠</b>
6	R60_c1(RAID60)		Running 31%	<b>\$</b> -
8	R1_c1(RAID1)		Running 69%	<del>،</del> •

#### **Redundancy Check actions menu**

# Rebuild

When you rebuild a disk array, you are actually rebuilding the data on one physical drive.

- When a physical drive in a disk array fails and a spare drive of adequate capacity is available, the disk array begins to rebuild automatically using the spare drive.
- If there is no spare drive of adequate capacity, but the Auto Rebuild function is ENABLED, the disk array begins to rebuild automatically as soon as you remove the failed physical drive and install an unconfigured physical drive in the same slot. See "Making Rebuild Settings" below.
- If there is no spare drive of adequate capacity and the Auto Rebuild function is DISABLED, you must replace the failed drive with an unconfigured physical drive, then perform a **Manual Rebuild**.

### Starting a Rebuild

Rebuilding a disk pool is only available if the status of a pool has been determined to be degraded or critical.

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Background Activities** icon.

The list of background activities appears.

- Choose the options in the Rebuild menu, including the Source Physical Drive and Target Physical Drive from the respective pull down menus.
- Click the Submit button to begin the rebuild. A rebuild requires confirmation by typing "Confirm" in the Confirmation pop up menu and clicking on the Confirm button.

PDM

Transition

Synchronization

# **Background Synchronization**

Synchronization is automatically applied to redundant logical drives when they are created. Synchronization

recalculates the redundancy data to ensure that the working data on the physical drives is properly in sync.

#### **Background Synchronization Rate**

1. To change Background Synchronization Rate setting, click on **Global Background Activities Settings** 

to view the Background Activities Settings menu, then click the Synchronization Rate drop-down

menu and choose a rate:

- Low Fewer system resources to Synchronization, more to data read/write operations.
- **Medium** Balances system resources between Synchronization and data read/write operations.
- **High** More system resources to Synchronization, fewer to data read/write operations.
- 2. Click the **Submit** button.

#### PDM

Predictive Data Migration (PDM) is the migration of data from the suspect physical drive to a spare drive, similar to rebuilding a logical drive. But unlike Rebuilding, PDM constantly monitors your physical drives and automatically copies your data to a spare drive before the physical drive fails and your logical drive goes Critical.

#### PDM Settings

To change PDM setting the in Background Activities Settings menu:

1. Click on Global Background Activities Settings to view the Background Activities Settings menu,

then click the PDM Rate drop-down menu and choose a rate:

- Low Fewer system resources to PDM, more to data read/write operations.
- Medium Balances system resources between PDM and data read/write operations.
- High More system resources to PDM, fewer to data read/write operations.
- 2. Highlight the current values in the block threshold fields and input new values.

Reassigned Block Threshold range is 1 to 512 blocks.

*Error Block Threshold* range is 1 to 2048 blocks.

3. Click the **Submit** button.

#### Transition

Transition is the process of replacing a revertible spare drive that is currently part of a disk array with an unconfigured physical drive or a non-revertible spare drive. To begin a transition, there must first be an unconfigured physical drive or a non-revertible spare available to be the target drive. Spare drives are normally created when setting up shared pools. See "Creating Spare Drive" on page 58 for instructions on how to set up spare drives.

To configure a transition, click the **Start** button for Transition in the Background Activities menu, in the new menu, choose the Source Drive and Target Drive in the affected pool and click on the **Submit** button.
# **Restore Factory Default Settings**

This feature restores settings to their default values.



#### Caution

Use this feature only when required and only on the settings that you must reset to default in order to set them correctly.

To restore all settings to their default values:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click Restore Factory Default.
- 3. In the Restore factory default settings screen, check the boxes beside the settings you want to reset to default value (see Factory Default Settings (by type) table below). Note that you have the option to select all firmware or all software settings to factory default, or choose each setting to reset individually for both categories.
- 4. Click the **Submit** button.
- 5. In the Confirmation box, type the word "confirm" in the field provided and click the **Confirm** button.



### Caution

If you apply Restore Factory Default settings to the Management Network Settings, you might lose your WebPam Pro connection.

### Factory Default Settings (by type)

#### Firmware Settings

- Background Activities Settings
- Controller Settings
- Enclosure Settings
- FC Settings
- iSCSI Settings
- Management Network Settings
- Physical Drive Settings
- Subsystem Settings

#### Software Settings

- BGA Scheduler Settings
- Service Settings
- Web Server Settings
- SNMP Settings
- SSH Settings
- Email Settings
- NTP Settings
- User Settings
- UPS Settings
- Syslog Settings
- Time Zone Settings
- NAS Settings

# **Export User Database**

You can save the user information and settings from one Vess R3600 RAID subsystem, export it, and then

import it to automatically configure your other Vess R3600 RAID subsystems.

To export a user database:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the **Import/Export** tab.
- 3. Click the Export option.
- 4. Choose **User Da**tabase radio button in the **Type** menu.
- 5. Click the **Submit** button.



#### Note

The user database file is not designed to be opened or edited in the field. The User.dat file is downloaded to the default download folder.

# **Export Service Report**

You can save a service report from a Vess R3600 RAID subsystem.

To export a Service Report:

- 1. Click the Administration tab.
- 2. Click the **Import/Export** tab.
- 3. Click the Export option.
- 4. Choose **Service Report** radio button in the **Type** menu.
- 5. Click the **Submit** button.

# Export Configuration Script, NAS Configuration, NAS Account

You can save a system report from a Vess R3600 RAID subsystem.

To export a user database:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Import/Export** tab.
- 3. Click the Export option.
- 4. Choose **the** radio button (Configuration Script, NAS Configuration or NAS Account) in the **Type** menu.
- 5. Click the **Submit** button.

# Import User Database

You can save the user information and settings from one Vess E5000 RAID subsystem, export it, and then import it to automatically configure your other Vess E5000 RAID subsystems.



Caution

Importing a user database overwrites the current users and user settings on your Vess E5000 subsystem.

To import a user database:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Import/Export icon.
- 3. Click the **Import** option.
- 4. Choose **User Da**tab**ase** radio button from the **Type** menu.
- 5. Click the **Upload** button and navigate to the user database file and click the **OK** button.
- 6. Click the **Next** button.

The system verifies that the file is a valid user database and displays any errors or warnings.

- 7. Click the **Submit** button to continue.
- 8. In the **Confirmation** box, type the word "**confirm**" in the field provided and click the Confirm button.

The user database is imported and applied automatically.

# Import Configuration Script, NAS Configuration, NAS Account

You can save a settings script for system configuration, NAS configuration or NAS account settings and use it to automatically configure your Vess E5000 subsystem. The script must be a plain, non-encrypted text file. From there, you can import the script from the Host PC and perform the configuration automatically.



### Cautions

Do NOT attempt to write or modify a configuration script until you receive guidance from Technical Support.

Importing a settings script overwrites the current settings on your Vess R3600 subsystem.

Or you can save the configuration from one Vess E5000 RAID subsystem, export it, and then import it to automatically configure your other Vess E5000 RAID subsystems. To import a configuration script:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the **Import/Export** icon.
- 3. Click the Import option.
- 4. Choose radio button (Configuration Script, NAS Configuration or NAS Account) in the **Type** menu.
- 5. Click the **Choose File** button and navigate to the configuration script and click the **Upload** button.
- 6. Click the Next button.

The system verifies that the file is a valid configuration script and displays any errors or warnings.

- 7. Click the **Submit** button to continue.
- In the Confirmation box, type the word "confirm" in the field provided and click the Confirm button.
   The settings script is imported and applied automatically.

# **Update Firmware**

Use this function to flash (update) the firmware on the Vess R3600.

Download the latest firmware image file from PROMISE support:

http://www.promise.com/support/ and save it to your Host PC or TFTP server.



#### Important

Verify that no background activities are running on the RAID subsystem.

To update the firmware on the subsystem and JBOD expansion units:

- 1. Click the **Administration** tab.
- 2. Click the Firmware Update tab.
- 3. Choose a download option:
  - Local File through HTTP Click the Choose File button, locate the firmware image file, click the file to choose it, then click the **Open** button.
  - **TFTP Server** Enter the TFTP Server host name or IP address, port number and file name.
- 4. Optional. Check the Non-disruptive Image Update (NDIU) box.

NDIU updates the RAID controllers and I/O modules one at a time, enabling I/O operations continue

during the firmware update. Updates with this option take a longer period of time to complete. Only dual

controller models support this feature.

5. Click the **Download** button.

The next screen shows the Flash Image (firmware image file) Version Number and Build Date.

6. Click the **Submit** button.

The progress of the update displays.



### Warning

Do NOT power off the subsystem during the update! Do NOT move to any other screen until the firmware update operation is completed! When the update is completed a message tells you to reboot the subsystem,

- 7. Click the **OK** button.
  - If you chose the Disruptive Flash Method, the RAID subsystem and JBOD expansion units automatically restart.
  - If you chose the Non-Disruptive Flash Method, the system automatically flashes and restarts the RAID controllers one at a time.

# Automatic Restart

If you did NOT check the NDIU box, the RAID subsystem and JBOD expansion units automatically restart. That

action temporarily disrupts I/O operations and drops your WebPAM PROe connection.

To reestablish your WebPAM PROe connection:

- 1. Wait no less than two minutes.
- 2. Click Logout in the WebPAM PROe Header, then log in again.

If you cannot log in, wait 30 seconds and try again.

3. In your browser, click Logout in the WebPAM PROe Header, then log in again.

If you cannot log in immediately, wait 30 seconds and try again.

# **Product Registration**

Access the **Product Registration** menu located in the **Administration** tab to register your Vess product. If you do not have an account, follow the links and instructions to create a new account.

In the Sign In menu, enter the Email ID and Password for your Promise account and click on **Submit**. If you do not have an account, click the *Don't have a Promise ID*? radio button, click **Submit** and enter the required information to create an account in the new menu.

# MANAGING WITH THE CLI

This chapter provides information on how to use the command line interface (CLI) for administration of the Vess R3600 with a description of the syntax and function of each command and its parameters. CLI management can be done remotely using an SSH based terminal simulation program, or connect directly to the device using the serial port.

For convenience, a table of contents (page 171) for the commands is included to jump to a specific command description.

# Making a Serial Connection

Before you begin, be sure the RJ11-to-DB9 serial data cable is connected between the Host PC and the Vess R3600 enclosure, and that both machines are booted and running.

#### Serial port on the Vess R3600i controller



Then do the following actions:

- 1. Change your terminal emulation program settings to match the following specifications:
  - Bits per second: 115200
  - Data bits: 8
  - Parity: None
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow control: none
- 2. Start your PC's terminal VT100 or ANSI emulation program.
- 3. Press Enter once to launch the CLI.

# Logging Into the CLI

1. At the Login prompt, type the user name and press Enter.

The default user name is *administrator*.

2. At the Password prompt, type the password and press Enter.

The default password is **password**.

The CLI screen appears.

Command Table of Contents		
about	177	
acl	178	
acltmpl	182	
allowip	185	
battery	187	
bbm	188	
bga	189	
bgasched	191	
buzz	196	
cache	197	
chap	199	
clone	200	
ctrl	202	
date	206	
domain	207	
encldiag	210	
enclosure	211	
event	213	

export	214
factorydefaults	215
fc	217
folder	219
group	221
import	223
initiator	224
iscsi	226
isns	230
license	232
logout	233
lunmap	233
maintenance	236
migrate	237
mp	239
nasconfig	240
nasshare	241
net	243
ntp	247

pair	248	snapshot	281
password	249	spare	283
pcie	250	stats	285
pdm	251	subscription	286
periodsnap	252	subsys	290
phydrv	255	swmgt	292
ping	259	sync	295
pool	261	target	296
protocol	265	topology	297
ptiflash	268	transit	298
quota	270	trunk	299
replication	271	tz	301
rb	274	volume	302
rc	275	ups	305
sasdiag	276	user	306
SC	277		
session	278		
shutdown	279		
smart	280		

# TABLE OF SUPPORTED COMMANDS

The table below and on the following pages provides a brief description of the CLI commands available on the

Vess R3600 Series.

Command	Action
about	View utility information.
acl	List, set, clear, cancel or refresh the ACL settings on the NAS Share
acltmpl	List, add or delete the Windows ACL common settings.
allowip	NFS allow share IP settings.
battery	View battery information or to recondition a battery.
bbm	View or clear the BBM defect list of the specified configured physical drive.
bga	View status of all current background activities. Enable or disable relevant background activities. Modify the background task rate for each of the background tasks.
bgasched	View status of all current background activities. Enable or disable relevant background activities. Modify the background task rate for each of the background tasks.
buzz	View buzzer status, enable/disable and turn on/off buzzer.
cache	View or edit cache information and settings.
chap	View, create, edit or delete a CHAP record. iSCSI host interface product only.
clone	View logical drive clone status and progress. Start, stop a clone.
ctrl	View or edit controller information and settings.
date	View or edit system time.
domain	Domain settings

## Table of Supported Commands (Continued)

Command	Action
encldiag	View enclosure element information.
enclosure	View or edit enclosure and SEP information and settings. Locate an enclosure via LEDs.
event	View or clear events logs.
export	Subsystems only. Export files to remote TFTP host.
factorydefaults	Restore settings to factory defaults.
fc	View or edit fc information and settings. Fibre Channel host interface product only.
folder	List, add, modify, delete and refresh folder.
group	List, add, modify or delete nas group.
import	Import files or license from remote TFTP host.
initiator	View initiator list, add or delete initiator entry.
iscsi	View or edit iSCSI information and settings. iSCSI host interface product only.
isns	View or edit iSNS information and settings. iSCSI host interface product only.
license	View license information.
logout	Logout session for the current user.
lunmap	View the LUN mapping and masking table. Enable or disable LUN mapping and masking on iSCSI and Fibre Channel host interface product. Add, delete or modify a LUN mapping and masking entry.
maintenance	Enter or exit maintenance mode.
migrate	Start or stop volume migration
mp	View media patrol status and progress. Start, stop a media patrol process.
nasconfig	List, reset or restore NAS configuration
nasshare	NAS share settings
net	View or edit ethernet network information and settings.
ntp	View or edit NTP status and settings
pair	List, add, modify and delete pair.
password	Modify a user's password

# Table of Supported Commands (Continued)

Command	Action
pcie	View PCIe slots information in controller.
pdm	View PDM status and progress. Start, stop, pause or resume a PDM process.
periodsnap	List, add, modify or delete periodic snapshot task.
phydrv	View or edit physical drive information and settings. Locate a physical drive via LEDs.
ping	Ping another system through management port.
pool	View or edit pool information. Create, edit or delete a new or existing pool.
protocol	Protocol settings.
ptiflash	Update system software and firmware through tftp server.
quota	List, set, cancel or refresh the Quota settings on NAS Share.
rb	View rebuild status and progress. Start, stop, pause, or resume a rebuild process.
rc	View redundancy check status and progress. Start, stop, pause or resume redundancy check.
replication	View volume replication status. Start or stop replication.
sasdiag	SAS diagnostic command.
sc	View spare check status. Start spare check.
session	View the list of active sessions.
shutdown	Shutdown or restart system.
smart	S.M.A.R.T diagnostic for physical drives.

## Table of Supported Commands (Continued)

Command	Action
snapshot	Create snapshots or modify snapshot settings.
spare	Create or modify hot spare drives.
stats	View or reset statistics.
subscription	View, modify, enable or disable event notification.
subsys	View or edit subsystem information and settings.
swmgt	View, start or stop software component.
sync	View logical drive synchronization status and progress.
target	View the target list. Add or delete a target entry.
topology	View SAS topology, the physical connections and device information. For products that support multiple enclosures only.
transit	View transition status and progress. Start, stop, pause or resume a transition process.
trunk	List, modify, create and delete trunk information and settings. iSCSI host interface product only.
tz	View and modify timezone information
ups	View or modify UPS information and status.
user	List, modify, create and delete user accounts on subsystem.
volume	List, add, modify, delete, export and un-export a volume.

# Notes and Conventions

Commands and options are NOT case sensitive.

Not all extended keys are supported. However, you can use the backspace and the left and right arrow keys for command line editing. In addition, the up and down arrow keys allow scrolling through the command history buffer.

If you need context-sensitive help, type one of the following commands:

<command> -h

That action will display full context-sensitive help for the specific command. Each command when used alone, such as "array" will display a summary of relevant information. If more information is desired, the -v verbose mode can be used. This will provide information for all relevant aspects of that command.

Usage terminology is as follows:

- [square braces] depict an optional switch
- <arrow braces> depict user input

Type " | more" at the end of each command, to display info page by page

#### about

#### Usage

about

#### Summary

Displays firmware information.

### acl

#### Usage

```
acl -a <action> [-f <full path>] [-s <settings>] [-v]
```

acl -a clear -f <full path>

acl -a set -f <full path> -s <settings>

acl -a cancel -f <full path>

acl -a refresh -f <full path>

#### Summary

This command allows the user to list, set, clear, cancel or refresh the ACL settings on the folder or file.

Note that only one set operation is allowed at the same time on different UIs.

#### Options

∙a <a< th=""><th>ction&gt;</th><th>Which action to perform.</th></a<>	ction>	Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) List ACL settings
	clear	clear acl settings
	set	set acl settings
	cancel	cancel the acl settings operation hold by others
	refresh	refresh acl settings
f <fu< td=""><td>ll path&gt;</td><td>Full path of folder or file.</td></fu<>	ll path>	Full path of folder or file.

-s "<option>=<value>"

Used to specify what settings to change.

Only valid for set action.

role=		acl role type.
	everyone	
	user	
	group	
name	)=	user name or group name.
Only valid f	or user or group acl role typ	be
acl=		acl settings
	unset	
	deny	
	ro	
	rw	
	windows	
Following s	ettings are valid for window	s acl setting.
temp	late=	Specify the ACL template name.
trave	rse=	Traverse folder/ execute file ACL
	allow	
	allow deny	
list=	allow deny	List folder/ read data ACL
list=	allow deny allow	List folder/ read data ACL
list=	allow deny allow deny	List folder/ read data ACL
list= r_attr	allow deny allow deny	List folder/ read data ACL Read attributes ACL
list= r_attr	allow deny allow deny = allow	List folder/ read data ACL Read attributes ACL

r_ext_attr=	Read extended attributes ACL
allow	
deny	
create=	Create files/ write data ACL
allow	
allow	
deny	
create_f=	Create folders/ append data ACL
allow	
deny	
w_attr=	Write attributes ACL
allow	
deny	
w_ext_attr=	Write extended attributes ACL
allow	
deny	
delete_s=	Delete subfolders and files ACL
allow	
deny	
delete=	Delete ACL
allow	
deny	

r_perm=	Read permission ACL
allow	
deny	
chg_perm=	Change permission ACL
allow	
denv	
take own=	Take owner ACL
allow	
deny	
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

## Examples:

acl -a list -f /FS/ns
acl -a list -f /FS/ns/a.txt
acl -a clear -f /FS/ns
acl -a set -f /FS/ns -s "role=user, name=testa, acl=ro"
acl -a cancel -f /FS/ns
acl -a refresh -f /FS/ns
Type '   grep "word1,word2,"' at the end of each command, to display filtered
info.

# acltmpl

#### Usage

```
acltmpl -a <action> [-n <template name>] [-s <settings>] [-v]
```

acltmpl -a list -n <template name>

```
acltmpl -a add -n <template name> -s <settings>
```

acltmpl -a mod -n <template name> -s <settings>

acltmpl -a del -n <template name>

#### Summary

This command allows the user to list, add, mod, del windows acl template.

#### Options

-a <action> W</action>	nich action to perform.	
list	(Default) List windows acl template	
add	Add windows acl template.	
mod	Mod windows acl template.	
del	Del windows acl template.	
-n <template name=""></template>	Specify the windows acl template.	

-s "<option>=<value>"

Used to specify the windows acl template settings. (Optional)

desc= Description of the templa	
traverse=	Traverse folder/ execute file ACL
allow	
deny	(Default)

list=	List folder/ read data ACL
allow	
deny	(Default)
r_attr=	Read attributes ACL
allow	
deny	(Default)
r_ext_attr	Read extended attributes ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)
create	Create files/ write data ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)
create_f	Create folders/ append data ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)
w_attr	Write attributes ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)
w_ext_attr	Write extended attributes ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)
delete_s	Delete subfolders and files ACL
allow	I
deny	(Default)

Delete ACL delete allow deny (Default) r\_perm Read permission ACL allow deny (Default) Change permission ACL chg\_perm allow deny (Default) Take owner ACL take\_own allow (Default) deny Verbose mode. Used with -a list. -V

#### Examples

# allowip

### Usage

allowip [-a <action>] -t <type> -d <ID> [-i <index>] [-s <settings>]

#### Summary

This command allows the user to add, modify or delete NFS allow share IP settings.

### Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.	
	list	(Default) List allow share ip for NFS protocol	
	add	add allow share ip for NFS protocol	
	mod	modify allow share ip for NFS protocol	
	del	delete allow share ip for NFS protocol	
	clear	clear allow share ip for NFS protocol	
	-t <type></type>	Storage type. If not specified for list action.	
	nasshare		
	-d <id></id>	The storage ID.	
	-i <index></index>	Used to specify the allow ip entry index.	
Only valid for modify or delete action			
	-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		
Used	to specify allow share ip settings	for NFS protocol	
	ip=	IP address	
	permission=		
	rw	read-write	
	ro	read-only	

#### squash=

all	all_squash
root	root_squash
noroot	no_root_squash
	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

#### Examples

-V

allowip -a list -t nasshare -d 2

allowip -a add -t nasshare -d 2 -s "ip=10.0.0.1, permission=ro, squash=root"

```
allowip -a mod -t nasshare -d 2 -i 1 -l "ip=10.0.0.1, permission=rw,
```

squash=noroot"

allowip -a del -t nasshare -d 2 -i 1

allowip -a clear -t nasshare -d 2

Type '| grep "word1,word2,..." at the end of each command, to display filtered info.

# battery

#### Usage

battery [-a <action>] [-b <batId>]

battery -a recondition -b <batld>

#### Summary

Battery is used to display the current status of a battery indicating the percentage of charge left.

This command is also used to recondition a battery. Reconditioning of a battery attempts to fully discharge, and then recharge it. In addition the battery will be reconditioned automatically once per month.

a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) List information for all batteries or a specific battery unit.
recondition	Recondition a specific battery.
b <battery id=""></battery>	Used to specify which battery in a given enclosure.

#### Examples

battery

```
battery -a recondition -b 1
```

## bbm

#### Usage

bbm [-a <action>] [-p <PdId>]

bbm -a clear -p <PdId>

#### Summary

The bbm command displays or clears the Bad Block Map (BBM) defect list for all configured physical drives.

#### Options

-a

<action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) List the BBM information.
clear	Clears the BBM list. For configured SATA drives only.
-p <pdid></pdid>	Specifies the physical drive id. For the -a list option, the default is
	all physical drives. For the -a clear option, you must specify a
	physical drive id.

#### Examples

```
bbm -p 1
bbm -a clear -p 3
```

# bga

### Usage

bga [-a <action>]

bga -a mod -s "<list of settings>"

#### Summary

The bga command displays all current background activities and makes settings for each background activity.

#### Options

-a <a< th=""><th>action&gt;</th><th>Specifies the action to perform.</th></a<>	action>	Specifies the action to perform.
	list	(Default) Lists current background activities.
	mod	Makes changes to one of the settings.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		Specifies which background activity settings to change.
	autorebuild=	Enable or disable auto-rebuild and auto-transition.
	enable	Auto-rebuild initiates a rebuild of an array when an unconfigured
		drive is inserted into the slot of a dead drive.
	disable	Auto-transition means transitioning is initiated on a used revertible
		spare in the following condition:
		1. When the rebuild has been completed using the revertible spare, and
		2. When an unconfigured drive is inserted into the slot of the dead drive
		which the was part of the array.
		or
		When a non-revertible spare has been inserted or created, and is
		applicable to the array This option affects all arrays on the subsystem.
<b< td=""><td>g task&gt;=<rate></rate></td><td>Background task rates are used to determine what percentage of the IO</td></b<>	g task>= <rate></rate>	Background task rates are used to determine what percentage of the IO
		load on the controller should be dedicated to the background task. A
		lower number will mean the task takes longer to complete, a higher
		number will cause the task to complete faster, all other things being equa

rebui	ldrate=	Rebuild rate determines the rate at which rebuild will run.
		(low=25, medium=50, high=75)
	low	
	medium	
	high	
rcrate=		Redundancy check rate determines the rate at which redundancy
		check will run. (low=25, medium=50, high=75)
	low	
	medium	
	high	
syncrate=		Synchronization rate determines the rate at which synchronization
		will run. (low=25, medium=50, high=75)
	low	
	medium	
	high	

#### Examples

```
bga
bga -a mod -s"rebuildrate=high"
Type ` | grep `word1,word2,..."' at the end of each command, to display
filtered info.
```

# bgasched

#### Usage

bgasched -a <action> -t <type> -s <list of settings>

bgasched -a add -t <type> -s <list of settings>

bgasched -a mod -t rc -i <RC scheduler id> -s <list of settings>

bgasched -a mod -t <type> -s <list of settings>

bgasched -a del -t <type>

bgasched -a del -t rc -i <RC scheduler id>

#### Summary

Bgasched is used to display all scheduled background activities as well as to allow the user to add, modify or delete date and time of the scheduled activities.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.		
list	(Default) Displays information of BGA scheduler.		
add	Create a new BGA scheduler.		
If exists RC scheduler, car	not add RC scheduler with all pools. The max number of RC scheduler is 2.		
Only 1 for other scheduler	S.		
mod	Modify a exist scheduler.		
Can not change poolid param of an exist RC scheduler to all pools.			
del	Delete a exist scheduler.		
-t <type></type>	Specifies what type of scheduler.		
20.0	Madia Datral Cabadula		
тр	Media Patroi Schedule.		
rc	Redundancy Check Schedule.		

br	Battery Reconditioning Schedule.	
SC	Spare Drive Check Schedule.	
-i <rc id="" scheduler=""></rc>	Specifies the RC scheduler ID. It's used for list/modify/delete RC	
	scheduler. If the option is not specified, assumed to all.	
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify which BGA scheduler settings to change.	
status=	Specifies status type of scheduler.	
enable	Enable a scheduler.	
disable	Disable a scheduler. The default is disable.	
starttime=	Used to specify start time of scheduler in the following format hh:mm	
	where hour's range is 0-23, minute's range are 0-59.	
	The default is 20:00 for MP, 22:00 for RC and SC, 02:00 for others.	
recurtype=	Specifies recurrence type of scheduler.	
	The default is monthly for br type, weekly for others.	
daily		
weekly		
monthly		
recurInterval=	Specifies recurrence Interval.	
	This option is for Daily and Weekly recurrence type.	
	For Daily type, the range is 1-255.	
	For Weekly type, the range is 1-52.	
	For Daily type, the default is 1.	
	For Weekly type, the default is 4 for MP, 2 for RC, 1 for others.	
dow=	Day of Week. This is for Weekly or Monthly recurrence type scheduler.	
	Regarding Monthly type, if daypattern (see below) is	

wom=

day of week, it will be used. For Weekly, the range is [Sun|Mon|Tues|Wed|Thur|Fri|Sat]. For multiple value, divided by space. The default is 'Fri' for MP, 'Wed' for RC, 'Tues' for SC, 'Sun Mon Tues Wed Thur Fri Sat' for others. For Monthly, the range is [Sun|Mon|Tues|Wed|Thur|Fri|Sat]. The default is Sat. daypattern = Specifies the daypattern type for Monthly recurrence type scheduler. dom Day of month. Specific day of week. dow dom= Day of Month, for 'dom' daypattern type. The range is 1~31. The default is 1. Week ordinal, for 'dow' daypattern type. The range is (1st| 2nd |3rd |4th |Last). The default is 1st. month= Months. The range are 1~12 divided by space or '~'. The default is 1~12.

startfrom= Start day of range of occurrence in the following format yyyy-mm-dd where month's range is 1-12, day's range is 1-31. The default is current date of system.

endon= Used to specify end time of scheduler. 0 (Default) No end time.

n An integer N indicates after N times.

yyyy-mm-dd End date, month's range is 1-12 and day's range is 1-31.

autofix=	Fix inco	nsistent	data.
aatonix		101010111	autu

enable The default is enable.

disable

pause= Pause on error.

enable

disable The default is disable.

poolid= The list of PoolID. For add action, if the option is not specified, assumed to for all pools. For multiple value, divided by space or '~'.

-v Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

#### Examples

```
bgasched
bgasched -a mod -t rc -i 1 -s "status=disable,poolid=1 3~5 7"
bgasched -a add -t mp -s "recurtype=monthly,daypattern=dow,wom=2nd,dow=Sun,
month= 1 3~6, endon=10"
bgasched -a add -t sc -s "recurtype=weekly,dow= Mon Wed Fri,starttime=12:00,
endon=2020-01-01"
Type ` | grep "word1,word2,..."' at the end of each command, to display
filtered info.
```

## buzz

#### Usage

buzz [-a <action>]

buzz -a list buzz -a enable buzz -a disable buzz -a on

buzz -a off

#### Summary

The buzz command displays the status of the buzzer, and enables, disables, turns on or turns off the buzzer.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) List the status of the buzzer.
enable	Enable the buzzer.
disable	Disable the buzzer.
on	Turn on the buzzer.
off	Turn off the buzzer.
# cache

## Usage:

```
cache [-a <action>] -t <type> [-m <media type>] [-p <phydrv id list>]
```

[-i <pool id list>]

#### Summary:

The cache command allows the user to list cache info. To add or del read/write cache using SSD physical drive. To modify SSD physical drives or to modify/remove assigned pools used in read/SSD write cache. As well as to modify or remove assigned pools for Memory media type write cache.

Note that a pool can be assigned to either SSD or Memory media type write cache.

#### **Options**:

-a <action></action>			Which action to perform.
	list		List cache info.
	add		Add read/write cache using SSD PDs.
			At least 2 SSD PDs required for write cache.
	mod		Modify SSD PDs or assigned pools used for read/write cache.
	del		Delete read/write cache using SSD PDs.
	remove		Remove assigned pool(s) from cache.
-t < type>			To specify type of cache.
	read write		
-m <n< td=""><td>nedia type&gt;</td><td></td><td>To specify the media type of the write cache.</td></n<>	nedia type>		To specify the media type of the write cache.
			Only valid for -t while type.
	ssd	(Defaults)	
	memory		

-p <phydrv id="" list=""></phydrv>	To specify physical drive IDs.
	Only valid for -a add/mod action.
-i <pool id="" list=""></pool>	To specify assigned pool IDs. If not specified for adding cache, it means no pool assigned. If not specified for -a remove action, it means to remove all the assigned pools. Only valid for -a add/mod/remove action.
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
cache
cache -a add -t read -p 1 -i 1
cache -a add -t write -p 1,2 -i 0
cache -a mod -t read -p 1,2 -i 1
cache -a mod -t write -m ssd -p 1,2 -i 0,1
cache -a mod -t write -m memory -i 3
cache -a remove -t read
cache -a remove -t write -m memory -i 3
cache -a remove -t write -m ssd
cache -a del -t read
cache -a del -t read
```

# chap

#### Usage

chap [-a <action>] [-i <ChapId>]

chap -a add [-s "<list of settings>"]

chap -a mod -i <ChapId> [-s "<list of settings>"]

chap -a del -i <ChapId>

#### Summary

The chap command is used to create, modify or delete a CHAP record. CHAP authentication is used between the subsystem and an initiator for the iSCSI host interface.

## Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) List the existing CHAP records.
add	Create a CHAP record.
mod	Modify an existing CHAP record. To change CHAP secret, use this
	operation without specifying -s.
del	Delete a CHAP.
-i <chap id=""></chap>	Used when viewing, modifying or deleting a CHAP record to
	uniquely identify the CHAP record which to manipulate.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	

name=	Specifies chap name.
type=	Specifies chap type. Could be local or peer.
peer:	A peer CHAP record is one that the initiator must know when
	logging into the subsystem local: A local CHAP is one that the
	subsystem must know when the initiator logs into the subsystem to
	create a session.

# clone

#### Usage

```
clone [-a <action>] [-i <clone id>] [-d <snapshot id>] [-n <clone name>] [-v]
```

clone -a list

clone -a add -d <snapshot id> -s "name=<clonename>"

clone -a mod -i <clone id> -s "name=<newclonename>"

clone -a del -i <clone id>

clone -a export -i <clone id>

clone -a unexport -i <clone id>

clone -a mount -i <clone id>

clone -a unmount -i <clone id>

#### Summary

The clone command allow user to view, add, delete a clone.

Can export or uexport a clone if it's type is volume. Can mount or unmount a clone if it's type is nasshare.

# Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.	
list	(Default) Displays the current active Clone(s) and their status(es).	
add	Add a clone based on snapshot.	
mod	Modify clone setting.	
del	Delete a clone.	
export	Export a clone.For volume type only.	
unexport	Unexport a clone.For volume type only.	
mount	Mount a clone. For nasshare type only.	
unmount	Unmount a clone.For nasshare type only.	
promote	Promote a clone.	
-i <clone id=""></clone>	Specify clone id.	
-d <snapshot id=""> S</snapshot>	pecify snapshot id.	
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		
name=	Name to clone, accept double-bytes.	
-f	Force delete the clone.	
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.	
-у	Enable non-interactive mode.	

# Examples

```
clone
clone -a add -d 1 -s "name=abc"
clone -a mod -i 1 -s "name=abc"
clone -a export -i 1
clone -a mount -i 1
```

# ctrl

#### Usage

```
ctrl [-a <action>] [-i <ctrlId>] [-c <ctrl count>] [-v]
```

ctrl -a mod [-i <ctrlId>] -s "<list of settings>"

ctrl -a clear [-i <ctrlld>] [-t <condition type>]

## Summary

The ctrl command displays controller information and changes controller settings.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action tto perform.
list	(Default) List current information of the controller(s).
mod	Make changes to one of the settings.
clear	Clear certain condition on the controller.
-i <ctrl id=""></ctrl>	Controller ID that information or settings are for. For high availability
	products, controller ID is required when setting alias of controller.
-c <ctrl count=""></ctrl>	Controller count. Used if the user wants information for multiple controllers.
-s " <option>=<va< td=""><td>lue&gt;" Used to specify which settings to change.</td></va<></option>	lue>" Used to specify which settings to change.
alias=	A user specified name used to identify a controller. It can be up to 47 characters long, containing alpha- numeric characters, blank spaces and underscores.
	The beginning and ending blank spaces will be discarded.

Following setting is shared if there are dual controllers:

coercion=	To enable or disable disk coercion functionality. Disk coercion will
	truncate the size of the physical disks but will make different sized drives
	appear as though they are similarly sized. For example, a 90.1 GB drive
	would appear as the same size as an 89.8 GB drive.
	This is important when using drives of different manufacturers when
	performing rebuilds or in use as hot spares.
	Coercion settings are shared if there are dual controllers:
enable	
disable	
coercionmethod=	The method of coercion.
GBTruncate	Truncates the drive to the nearest 1-billion byte boundary.
10GBTruncate	Truncates the drive to the nearest 10-billion byte boundary.
GrpRounding	Truncates the drive using an intelligent algorithm.
	This allows the maximum amount of usable space while at the same time
	attempting to keep drives in the same size group the same size. For
	example a 253 GB drive would appear the same size as a 248 GB drive.
TableRounding	This uses a pre-defined coercion table to determine how much
	will be truncated.
smart=	Enables or disables polling drive SMART status.
enable	
disable	

smartpollinginterval=	(1 - 1440) Sets the time interval in number of minutes to poll the drive	
SMART status.		
cacheflushinterval=	(1-12) Sets the time interval in seconds to flush the controller writeback cache.	
pollinterval=	Polling interval in seconds to poll enclosure SEP information. 15255	
adaptivewbcache=	To enable or disable adaptive writeback cache.	
enable	Writeback logical drives will change the write policy based on the	
	availability of protection. If BBU or UPS is available, the write policy is	
	retained as Writeback, otherwise the policy is switched to Writethru.	
disable	The write policy of the writeback logical drives are not changed	
	irrespective of the availability of BBU or UPS.	
hostcacheflushing=	To enable or disable host cache flushing. When enabled, SYNCHRONIZE	
	CACHE SCSI command from host is supported.	
	For high availability products only.	
enable		
disable		
forcedreadahead= To enable or disable forced read ahead. For high availability products only.		
enable		
disable		
ssdtrimsupport= To enable or	disable SSD trim. Default value is enabled.	
enable		
disable		

powersavingidletime=	After an HDD has been idle for the set period of time, parks the read/write
	heads. Set the time interval in number of minutes. Valid values are
	0(never), 15, 30, 60(= 1 hour)1440(=24 hours).
powersavingstandbytime=	After an HDD has been idle for the set period of time, lowers disk rotation
	speed. Set the time interval in number of minutes. Valid values are
	0(never), 15, 30, 60(= 1 hour)1440(=24 hours).
powersavingstoppedtime=	After an HDD has been idle for the set period of time, Spins down the
	disk (stops rotation). Set the time interval in number of minutes. Valid
	values are 0(never), 15, 30, 60(= 1 hour)1440(=24 hours).
VAAIsupport=	To enable or disable VAAI support.
enable	
disable	
pseudodevicetype= pseudo de	vice type
das	DAS
ctrl	Storage controller device
-t <condition type=""></condition>	Used to specify the type of condition to clear. It is valid only when the
	command action is "clear".
watermark	Watermark, the only supported condition for now. It is used together with
	-a clear to clear the orphan migration watermark in the controller NVRAM.
	This will work only when migration storage is set to NVRAM prior to
	starting migration.
-I Display local contro	oller's id that CLI runs through its serial port.
-v Verbose mode. Us	ed with -a list.

```
ctrl
ctrl -v
ctrl -l
ctrl -a mod -i 1 -s "alias=ctrl1, coercion=enable"
ctrl -a mod -s "powersavingstoppedtime=180"
```

# date

#### Usage

date

```
date -a mod [-d <date>] [-t <time>] [-z <timezone>]
```

## Summary

The date command allows the user to view and modify the system time.

## Options

-a

<action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the current system time.
mod	Modifies the current system time.
-d <date></date>	Used to specifies date in the following format: yyyy/mm/dd where month's
	range is 1-12 and day's range is 1-31.
-t <time></time>	Used to specifies time in the following format: hh:mm:ss where hour's
	range is 0-23, minute's and seconds' range are 0-59.

# Examples

date date -a mod -d 2004/02/25 -t 14:50:05

# domain

#### Usage

```
domain -a <action> [-t <type>] [-s <settings>]
```

#### Summary

This command allows the user to list, enable or disable domain settings, check KDC for Windows AD or domain

name for LDAP, as well as to rejoin into domain sever by existing domain settings.

## Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) List domain settings
	enable	enable setting and join into domain
	disable	Leave from domain
	refresh	Rejoin into domain by existing domain settings.
		Valid for already joined into domain mode.
	check	Show Key Distribution Center info for Windows AD or domain name for
		LDAP.
-t <type></type>		Domain server type.
	ad	Windows AD
	ldan	
	шар	LDAP
	od	MAC OD
I "contiant - cuclust" Chapter that DAD domain potting used to get domain name for LDAD time, or another		

-I "<option>=<value>" Specify the LDAP domain setting used to get domain name for LDAP type, or specify windows AD domain name to get the kdc. Only valid for -a check operation.

domain=	Domain name. Only valid for windows AD.
server=	Domain server host. Only valid for LDAP.
basedn=	Domain base DN. Only valid for LDAP.
' <value>'</value>	
security=	Security type. Only valid for LDAP.

	none	(Default)
	tls	
	ssl	
-s "<0	ption>= <value>"</value>	Used to specify domain settings.
		Only valid for -a enable action.
	domain=	(AD/LDAP)Domain name
	kdc=	(AD) Key Distribution Center
	netbios=	(AD) NetBIOS Name
	server=	(LDAP/OD) Domain server host
	basedn=	(LDAP/OD) Base DN
	<value>'</value>	
	security=	(LDAP) security type
	none	(Default)
	tls	
	ssl	
	usersuffix=	(LDAP) user suffix
	<value>'</value>	
	grpsuffix=	(LDAP) group suffix
	<value>'</value>	
	username=	(AD/LDAP/OD) Domain join user name for AD or root DN for LDAP/OD
	password=	(AD/LDAP/OD) Domain join password
	clear=	Clear acl/quota setting directly or not. Only valid for enable and disable
		action.
	no	(default)
	yes	
-V	Verbose mode. L	lsed with -a list.

```
domain -a list
domain -a enable -t ad -s "domain=2008ad.com,
    kdc=WIN-CC18N6QMNLL.2008AD.com, netbios=2008ad, username=administrator,
    password=password"
domain -a enable -t ldap -s "domain=test.com, server=10.84.2.46,
    security=none, basedn='dc=test,dc=com', username=admin,
    password=password, usersuffix='ou=People', grpsuffix='ou=Group'"
domain -a check -t ad -1 "domain=2008ad.com"
domain -a check -t ad -1 "domain=2008ad.com"
domain -a check -t ldap -1 "server=10.84.2.71,security=tls,
    basedn='dc=test,dc=com'"
domain -a disable
domain -a refresh
Type ` | grep "wordl,word2,..."' at the end of each command, to display
filtered info.
```

# encldiag

#### Usage

encldiag -a <action> -e <EnclosureId> -t <element type>

#### Summary

The enclosure diagnostic command is used to get enclosure element information, such as PSU usage, PSU power on time.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	Display enclosure diagnosis information.
-e <enclosure id=""></enclosure>	Used to specify enclosure ID.
-t <diagnose type=""></diagnose>	Used to specify type of diagnosis.
all	(Default) Display the all enclosure diagnosis information.
psu	Display the PSU Usage Info.
powerontime	Display the enclosure element power on time information.

## Examples

```
encldiag -a list
encldiag -a list -t all
encldiag -a list -e 1 -t psu
```

# enclosure

#### Usage

enclosure [-a <action>] -v

enclosure -a mod -s <list of settings>

enclosure -a locate [-t <FRU type> -f <FRU id>]

#### Summary

The enclosure command provides status and information about the various components of the enclosure unit. It is also used to set thresholds for temperature and polling. In addition when using the -v option all VPD (Vendor Provided Data) will be displayed.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays information and status of the enclosure.
mod	Allows the user to modify settings when coupled with the -s switch.
locate	Allows the user to locate an enclosure by flashing LEDs
-e <encl id=""></encl>	Enclosure ID. The default value is 1 if unspecified.
	For list action, the default is for all enclosures if unspecified.
-i <sensor id=""></sensor>	IOM Sensor ID. For controller temperature warning (16) and critical
	threshold. If unsepecified, only the IOM sensor 1,4 will be set, the IOM
	sensor 2,3,5,6 will not changed.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify which Enclosure settings to change.
	Please note that IOM sensor 1 and 4 will always in same warning or
	critical threshold settings. So changes on either sensor 1 or sensor 4
	will take effected on both.

ctrltempwarning=	Controller temperature, displayed in Celsius, that the controller will
	consider as a warning threshold.
	(61-65) For IOM sensor 1,4.
	(66-70) For IOM sensor 2,5.
	(71-78) For IOM sensor 3,6.
otritomporition	Controller temperature, displayed in Calaius, that the controller will
cuntempontical-	Controller temperature, displayed in Celsius, that the controller will
	consider as a critical threshold.
	(68-72) For IOM sensor 1,4.
	(73-77) For IOM sensor 2,5.
	(81-88) For IOM sensor 3,6.
-t <fru type=""></fru>	Used with action locate to indicate which type of FRU to locate. If -t is not
	specified, it indicates to locate the enclosure.
ctrl	To locate controller.
cooling	To locate cooling unit. It only works with SAS type enclosure.
DSU	To locate power supply unit. It only works with SAS type enclosure.
-f <fru id=""></fru>	Used with action locate and -t <fru type=""> option to indicate which FRU</fru>
	to locate. The valid values for FRU id are 1,2,3 and 4.
Y.	Verbage mode Llood with a list V/DD information will also be displayed
-v	
	when using this switch.

#### enclosure

enclosure -v

enclosure -a mod -s "tempwarning=40,tempcritical=70"

# event

#### Usage

```
event [-a <action>] [-i <SeqNo>] [-c <event count>] [-v]
```

## event -a clear

#### Summary

The event command displays and clears the RAM and NVRAM event logs.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Specified the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the events for the specified location. RAM events are
	displayed if no location is specified.
clear	Clear events for a specified location.
-i <sequence id=""></sequence>	Specifies a specific event by its sequence number. This is a starting point.
	Requires the -a list option. You can use the -c option.
-c <event count=""></event>	Specifies the number of events to retrieve when displaying events.
-b	Used to specify events created after latest boot time. Used with -a list.
-V	Verbose mode. Requires the -a list option.

#### Examples

event event -v event -c 200 event -a list -i 852 -c 200

## export

#### Usage

export -t <fileType> [-s <tftpServer>] [-p <port>] [-x <fileExt>] -f <fileName>

#### Summary

The export command exports certain types of configuration files to a TFTP server.

#### Options

-t <file type=""></file>	Specifies the type of file to export.
userdb	User database file.
configscript	Configuration script.
servicereport	System service report file in compressed HTML format.
nasconfig	NAS configuration
nasaccount	NAS account
-f <file name=""></file>	Specifies the name of the file to be exported.
-x <file ext=""></file>	Specifies the type of the file.
txt	Saves service report as a text file.
html	Saves service report as a compressed HTML file (default).
-s <tftp server=""></tftp>	Specifies tftp server's IP or host name.
-p <port num=""></port>	The port number of the TFTP server. Default is 69.

#### Examples

```
export -t userdb -s 192.168.1.1 -f userdb.bin
export -t servicereport -s 192.168.1.1 -f servicereport
export -t servicereport -s 192.168.1.1 -f servicereport -x txt
```

Note: Make sure that you have a file named <fileName>.<html|txt>.gz (e.g. servicereport.txt.gz or servicereport. html.gz) created on the specified TFTP server, with write permissions.

# factorydefaults

## Usage

factorydefaults -a <action> -t <type>

#### Summary

The factory defaults command restores specified settings to the factory default values.

## Options

-a <action></action>		Specifies the action to perform.
	restore	Restore the factory default settings.
-t <typ< td=""><td>De&gt;</td><td>Specifies the type of settings to restore.</td></typ<>	De>	Specifies the type of settings to restore.
	all	All settings.
	allfw	All firmware settings.
	allsw	Subsystems only. All software settings.

The following are individual Firmware settings:

bga	Background activity settings.
ctrl	Controller settings.
encl	Enclosure settings, including temperature thresholds, buzzer, etc.
fc	fc port settings. Fibre Channel host interface product only.
iscsi	iSCSI settings, restore operation applies to port and iSNS; erase
	operation applies to all iSCSI components, including target, portal, chap,
	trunk, etc. iSCSI host interfa

network	network settings including management port and portal, iSCSI port, portal,	
	trunk and iSNS.	
phydrv	Physical drive settings.	
subsys	Subsystem settings.	

The following are individual Software settings:

bgasched	bga scheduler settings.
service	service startup type settings.
webserver	web server settings.
snmp	snmp settings.
ssh	ssh settings.
email	email settings.
ntp	ntp settings.
tz	Time zone settings.
user	user settings.
ups	ups manager configuration settings.
syslog	syslog settings.
nas	nas settings.(Only valid when nas feature is enabled)

# Examples

factorydefaults -a restore -t phydrv factorydefaults -a restore -t all

# fc

#### Usage

```
fc [-a <action>] [-t <Type>] [-i <CtrlId>] [-p <PortId>] [-v]
```

fc -a mod -t <Type> -i <CtrlId> -p <PortId> -s "<list of settings>"

fc -a reset -i <Ctrlld> -p <PortId>

#### Summary

The fc command is used to view and modify Fibre Channel information and settings. Fibre Channel host interface product only.

#### Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Gives summary information about Fibre Channel status.
	mod	Modify Fibre Channel settings.
	reset	Reset Fibre Channel port(s)
	clear	Clear the port statistics.
-t <ty< td=""><td>pe&gt;</td><td>Specifies what type of information to display or modify.</td></ty<>	pe>	Specifies what type of information to display or modify.
	node	Display Fibre Channel node information.
	port	(Default) Specifies Fibre Channel port as the device type to
		display or modify information.
	SFP	Display port SFP (Small Form Factor Pluggable) information.
	stats	Display port statistics information.
	loggedininitiators	Display port logged in initiator information.
	loggedintargets	Display port logged in target information.
	fabricdevices	Display devices list from fabric switch.
-i <ctrlld></ctrlld>		Controller Id. Default to be all available controllers for listing if -i is not
		specified. Default to be controller 1 for modifying if -i is not specified.

-p <port id=""></port>		Port Id. Default to be all ports for listing if -p is not specified.
		Default to be port 1 for modifying if -p is not specified.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		Specifies Fibre Channel settings to change.
linkspeed=		Fibre Channel link speed.
	4gb	4 GB/s
	8gb	8 GB/s
	16gb	16 GB/s
	auto	Automatic
topology=		Fibre Channel topology method.
	nlport	NL-Port
	nport	N-Port
	auto	Automatic
	hardalpa=	Hard Arbitrated Loop Physical Address (ALPA)
	0255	Value 255 will disable hard ALPA.
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

fc fc -t port -v fc -a mod -t port -p 1 -s "linkspeed=8gb" fc -a reset -i 1 -p 2 fc -a clear -i 1 -p 2

# folder

## Usage:

folder [-a <action>] [-p <path>] [-t <type>] [-c <count>] [-s <settings>]

# Summary:

The folder command is used to list, create, delete or refresh the folder as well as modify or change owner of file or folder.

# Options:

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.	
list	(Default) Displays information of specified path.	
add	Create folder with specified path.	
del	Delete folder or file with specified path.	
mod	Modify folder or file with specified path.	
refresh	Refresh the folder with specified path.	
-p <path></path>	Specify the foler or file path.	
-c <count></count>	Specify the count of folder and files under specified path.	
	Used with list action.	
-n <page number=""></page>	Specify the page number to display.	
	Used with list action.	
-t <type></type>	Specify the path type. Valid for mod or delete actions.	
folder	Folder type.	
file	File type.	

-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		Used to specify what options to change.	
		Only valid for add or mod action.	
	owner=	Specify the folder or file owner.	
	recursive=	Recursive enable or disable. Valid for folder type.	
	enable		
	disable		
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.	

```
folder -a list -p /FS/ns1 -c 10
folder -a add -p /FS/ns1/nnn -s "owner=aaa"
folder -a del -p /FS/ns1/nnn -t folder
folder -a mod -p /FS/ns1/nnn -t folder -s "owner=aaa, recursive=enable"
folder -a refresh -p /FS/ns1/nnn
```

# group

#### Usage:

group [-a <action>] [-n <group name>]

group -a add -g <group name> [-u "user=<user name list>"]

group -a mod -g <group name> -s "desc=<>"

group -a del -g <group name>

group -a adduser -g <group name> [-u "user=<user name list>"]

group -a deluser -g <group name> [-u "user=<user name list>"]

#### Summary:

This command is used to view, add and delete an existing group.

#### **Options:**

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.	
list		(Default) Displays the group info.	
		If no group name specified, all groups will be displayed.	
	add	Add group.	
	mod	Modify group description.	
	del	Delete group.	
	adduser	Add user to group.	
	deluser	Delete user from group.	
	refresh	Refresh group.	
-g <g< td=""><td>roup name&gt;</td><td>Specify the group name when add the group.</td></g<>	roup name>	Specify the group name when add the group.	
-u <u< td=""><td>ser name&gt;</td><td>Specify the user name belonged to the group.</td></u<>	ser name>	Specify the user name belonged to the group.	
-s "<(	option>= <value>"</value>		
	desc=	The description of group.	

group
group -a add -g gname
group -a mod -g gname -s "desc=<>"
group -a del -g gname
group -a adduser -g gname -u a
group -a refresh

# import

## Usage

import -t <fileType> -s <tftpServer> -f <fileName> [-p <port>] [-i] [-l]

#### Summary

The import command is used to import files from a remote host.

## Options

-t <fil< th=""><th>e type&gt;</th><th>Specifies what type file to import.</th></fil<>	e type>	Specifies what type file to import.
	userdb	User database file.
	configscript	Configuration script.
	nasconfig	NAS configuration
	license	License file.
-s <t< td=""><td>FTP server&gt;</td><td>Specifies tftp server's IP or host name.</td></t<>	FTP server>	Specifies tftp server's IP or host name.
-f <fil< td=""><td>e name&gt;</td><td>Specifies the name of the file to import.</td></fil<>	e name>	Specifies the name of the file to import.
-р <р	ort num>	The port number of the TFTP server. Default is 69.
-i		Get format validation information about imported file only. File is not really
		applied to subsystem yet.
		This option is applicable for userdb file only.
-1		Do not use tftp server.

#### Examples

import -t userdb -s 192.168.10.168 -f userdb.xml
import -t license -s 192.168.10.168 -f license.dat -y

# initiator

#### Usage

initiator [-a <action>] [-i <Index>] [-c <Count>]

initiator -a add [-i <Index>] -n <Name>

initiator -a del -i <Index>

#### Summary

Use this to display information about the current initiator list as well as to add or delete an initiator.

#### Options

-a <a< th=""><th>ction&gt;</th><th>Which action to perform.</th></a<>	ction>	Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Displays the current initiator list.
	add	Add an initiator to the list.
	del	Delete an initiator from the list.
-i <in< td=""><td>dex&gt;</td><td>(0-2047) Used to specify the index of the initiator. For -a list option, it is</td></in<>	dex>	(0-2047) Used to specify the index of the initiator. For -a list option, it is
		the starting index and may be used with -c option. For other options, it is
		the specific index.

# Caution



For -a add option, if the index specified is already in use, the existing initiator name is overwritten with new name.

-c <count></count>	Used to specify the number of initiators to be listed.
	Only used with -a list option.
-t <type></type>	When used with the -a add option, this option specifies which kind of initiator to add.
fc	For a Fibre Channel host interface.
iscsi	For an iSCSI host interface.
-n <name></name>	Used to specify the name of the initiator.
	For an iSCSI host interface product, the name should be the initiator's iSCSI name, e.g. iqn.vendorcompany.com
	For a Fibre Channel host interface product, the name should be the
	initiator's WWPN in hex format, e.g. aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff-11-22

initiator -i 1 -c 2 initiator -a add -n iqn.vendorcompany.com

# iscsi

## Usage

```
iscsi [-a <action>] [-t <Type>] [-i <componentId>] [-r <CtrIId> -p <PortId>]
```

```
[-c <Count>] [-m <PortalInterfaceType>] [-v]
```

iscsi -a mod [-t <Type>] [-i <TargetId|SessionId|PortalId|DeviceId>]

```
[-r <CtrlId> -p <PortId>] -s "<list of settings>"
```

#### Summary

The iscsi command is used to display and modify iSCSI information and settings. Use this to view and modify iSCSI component and global settings, and to add and delete iSCSI portals. iSCSI host interface product only.

#### Options

a <a< th=""><th>ction&gt;</th><th>Which action to perform.</th></a<>	ction>	Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Gives summary information about iSCSI status.
	add	Add iSCSI portal.
	mod	Modify iSCSI settings.
	del	Delete iSCSI target, portal or session.
-t <t< td=""><td>/pe&gt;</td><td>Specifies the type of information. For list action, the default</td></t<>	/pe>	Specifies the type of information. For list action, the default
		is target if unspecified. For modify action, the default is global
		iSCSI setting if the type is unspecified.
	target	Specifies iSCSI target as the device type to display, add, modify or
		delete information.
	port	Specifies iSCSI port as the device type to display or modify
		information.
	session	Display or delete session information.
	portal	Display, add, modify or delete portal information.
	device	Displays the logged in devices information.

-i <component id>

	<target id=""></target>	Target id for iSCSI target type.
	<session id=""></session>	Session id for iSCSI session type or stats type.
	<portal id=""></portal>	Portal id for iSCSI portal type.
	<device id=""></device>	Device id for iSCSI device type
-r <co< td=""><td>ontroller id&gt;</td><td>Controller id.</td></co<>	ontroller id>	Controller id.
-p <p< td=""><td>ort id&gt;</td><td>Port id for iSCSI port type and add iSCSI portal type.</td></p<>	ort id>	Port id for iSCSI port type and add iSCSI portal type.
-c <c< td=""><td>count&gt;</td><td>Used to specify the number of items to be listed.</td></c<>	count>	Used to specify the number of items to be listed.
		Only used with -a list option.
-m <p< td=""><td>oortal interface type&gt;</td><td>Valid for add iSCSI portal type.</td></p<>	oortal interface type>	Valid for add iSCSI portal type.
	phy	(Default)
	vlan	
	trunk	
-s " <c< td=""><td>option&gt;=<value>"</value></td><td>Specifies which iSCSI type settings to change.</td></c<>	option>= <value>"</value>	Specifies which iSCSI type settings to change.
		The following are for target settings. Requires -t target and -n <target id=""></target>
		options.
	alias=	Target alias.
		Can up to 31 characters long, containing alphanumeric characters, blank
		spaces and underscores. The beginning and ending blank spaces will be
		discarded.
	headerdigest=	32bit CRC for iSCSI headers. Enabling a header digest may decrease
		performance.
	enable	
	disable	

	datadigest	32bit CRC for iSCSI data. Enabling a data digest may decrease
		performance.
	enable	
	disable	
	unichapauth	Unidirectional CHAP authorization. Requires the initiator to have a CHAP
		secret to log into the subsystem. Can be configured only when modify a
		target.
	enable	
	disable	
	bichapauth	Bidirectional CHAP authorization. Requires both the subsystem and
		initiator to have a CHAP secret to log in. Can be configured only when
		modify a target.
	enable	
	disable	
The fo	ollowing setting applies to s	essions and targets.
Requi	ires -t session and -r <conti< td=""><td>roller id&gt;, -i <session id=""> options or -t target and -i <target id=""></target></session></td></conti<>	roller id>, -i <session id=""> options or -t target and -i <target id=""></target></session>
	keepalive = Keeps an i	SCSI session alive. For global setting,
	enable omit -t and -i o	options.
	disable	
The fo	ollowing settings apply to p	orts.
Requi	Requires -t port and -r <controller id="">, -p <port id=""> options.</port></controller>	
	jumboframe = Enable o	r Disable the jumbo frame of the port.
	enable	
	disable	

-V

The following settings apply to portals.

Requires -t portal and -g <portal id> options.

Adding a portal also requires -m <portal interface type> optioin.

vlantag =	The VLAN tag of a portal in LAN-mode. Range is 1 to 4094.
trunkid =	The Trunk ID of a portal in Trunk-mode. Range is 1 to 8.
dhcp =	Enable or Disable DHCP on the portal.
enable	
disable	
iptype =	The IP address type of portal.
4	IPv4
6	IPv6
primaryip =	The primary IP address of portal. Use when DHCP is disabled.
primaryipmask =	The primary IP mask of portal. Use when DHCP is disabled.
gateway =	Specify the gateway.
tcpport =	Specify the tcp port number.
porttype =	The port type used to create portal.
	Only valid for -m phy or vlan interface type.
io	
mgmt	
attribute =	The portal mode.
io	
advanced	
	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
iscsi
iscsi -t port -r 1 -p 2
iscsi -a del -t session -i 2 -r 1
iscsi -a mod -s "keepalive=enable"
iscsi -a mod -t target -i 1 -s "alias=vendorNode"
iscsi -a add -t portal -r 1 -p 1 -m phy -s "iptype=4,dhcp=enable, porttype=io"
iscsi -a add -t portal -r 1 -p 2 -m vlan -s "iptype=4,dhcp=enable,
vlantag=4,porttype=io"
iscsi -a add -t portal -m trunk -s "iptype=4,dhcp=enable,trunkid=0"
```

# isns

#### Usage

isns [-a <action>]

isns -a mod -t <Type> [-g <PortalID>] -s "<list of settings>"

#### Summary

iSCSI iSNS Information and Settings. iSCSI host interface product only.

# Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays a summary of iSNS settings.
mod	Allows the user to change iSNS settings
-t <port type=""></port>	The type of port to iSNS through. If -t is not specified, the default value is
	Mgmt port.
portal	iSCSI portal. For iSCSI host interface product only.
mgmt	Management port. For embedded only.
-g <portal id=""></portal>	Portal ID
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify what options to change.
isns =	Enable and disable iSNS.
enable	
disable	
serverip =	iSNS server ip address.
serverport =	iSNS server port number. The default value is 3205.
	165535

# Examples

# isns -a mod -t mgmt -s "isns=enable,serverip=10.0.10.90"

# license

#### Usage

license [-a <action>]

#### Summary

It can be used to view the imported license information.

Use command "import" to import or update license file.

#### Options

a <action></action>	Specify which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays imported license info

# Examples

license license -a list Type `` | more" at the end of each command, to display info page by page. Type ` | grep `word1,word2,..."' at the end of each command, to display filtered info.
# logout

#### Usage

logout

#### Summary

The logout command is used to logout the current user from the session.

#### Examples

logout

# lunmap

#### Usage

lunmap [-a <action>] [-i <InitiatorId>] [-t <type>] [-c <Count>]

lunmap -a addlun -i <InitiatorId> [-p <SourceType>] [-I <SourceIdList>] [-m <LunMapList>]

```
lunmap -a dellun -i <InitiatorId> [-p <SourceType>] [-I <SourceIdList>]
```

```
lunmap -a add [-i <InitiatorId>] -n <Name> -t <type> [-p <SourceType>] [-l <LdIdList>] [-m <LunMap>]
```

lunmap -a del -i <InitiatorId>

lunmap -a enable

lunmap -a disable

#### Summary

The lunmap command displays information about the current LUN mapping and masking (LMM) table information and enables you to add, modify, and delete LMM entries. LMM can be enabled or disabled.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the current LMM table.
enable	Enables LMM.
disable	Disables LMM.
add	Adds an LMM entry and its LUN maps to the table.
del	Deletes an LMM entry from the table.
addlun	Adds or modifies an LUN map for an existing LMM entry.
dellun	Deletes a LUN map for an existing LMM entry.
-i <initiatorid></initiatorid>	(0-2047) Specifies the initiator ID for an initiator based LMM entry.
	For -a list option, it is the starting index.
	May be used with -c option.
-c <count></count>	Specifies the number of LMM entries to be listed.
	Only used with -a list option.
-t <type></type>	When used with the -a add option, this option specifies which kind of
	initiator to add.
fc	
iscsi	
-n <name></name>	Specifies the initiator name.
	For iSCSI host interface, the name is the initiator's
	iSCSI name, such as iqn.vendorcompany.com
	For Fibre Channel host interface, the name is the initiator's WWPN in hex
	format, such as aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff-11-22

-p <source type=""/>	Specifies the source type.
volume	
snapshot	
clone	
-I <source id="" list=""/>	(0-1023) Specifies the source IDs.
-m <lun list="" map=""></lun>	(0-1023) Specifies the LUN mapping values.
	Please check the maximum number of LUNs supported by host OS.

lunmap -i 1 -c 2 lunmap -a addlun -p volume -i 1 -l 2 -m 2 lunmap -a dellun -p volume -i 1 -l 2 lunmap -a enable lunmap -a add -i 0 -p volume -l 0,1 -m 0,1

# maintenance

#### Usage

maintenance [-a <action>] -i <CtrlId>

maintenance -a enter -i <CtrlId>

#### Summary

The maintenance command instructs the selected RAID controller to enter maintenance mode.

Note: To bring the RAID controller out of maintenance mode, enter the command "shutdown -a restart".

#### Options

\_

a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
enter	(Default)Enter maintenance mode.
i <ctrlld></ctrlld>	Controller id.

## Examples

maintenance -i 1

# migrate

## Usage

migrate [-a <action>] [-i <ID>] [-t <location>] [-p <pool ID>] [-s <settings>]

#### Summary

The migrate command allows the user to migrate volume into another pool which located in same subsystem

(Local) or other subsystem (Remote).

As well as to list or stop a specified migration.

Only with thin-provision disabled volume can be used to migrate. During migration in progress, source volume cannot be expanded or removed; destination volume disallowed to do any operations.

Note: Snapshot and clone of source volume will not be migrated. They won't be reserved after migration.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the migration in progress.
start	Start a specific migration progress.
stop	Stop the migration
-i <id></id>	Source volume ID.
-t <location></location>	Destination location.
local	(Default)
remote	
-p <pool id=""></pool>	Destination pool ID.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify migration settings
srcip=	Source portal IP
	Only valid for -t remote specified.
dstip=	Destination portal IP of remote subsystem.
	Only valid for -t remote specified.

	syncmode=	sync mode method.
	async	
	semi-sync	
	sync	(Default)
	srcwwn=	source subsystem wwn.It's optional when start remote migrate.
	dstwwn=	destination subsystem wwn.lt's optional when start remote migrate.
-V	Verbose mode. L	lsed with -a list.
-у	Enable non-intera	ctive mode.

```
migrate
migrate -a start -i 1 -t local -p 0
migrate -a start -i 2 -t remote -p 0 -s "srcip=10.0.0.1, dstip=10.0.0.2"
migrate -a stop -i 1
migrate -a stop -t remote -i 1
```

## mp

#### Usage

mp -a <action>

#### Summary

Media patrol (MP) is a feature that will actively search the disks for media errors. When an error is found, MP will attempt to repair the error. If MP fails to correct the error, MP will attempt to reassign the sector. Note: Support for reassignment of sectors is not currently supported.

MP will allow the user to start, stop, pause, or resume a media patrol as well as to check on the progress and status.

#### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Display the status and progress of media patrol.
start	Start media patrol.
stop	Stop media patrol.
pause	Pause media patrol.
resume	Resume a paused media patrol.

mp
mp -a stop
mp -a resume

# nasconfig

## Usage

nasconfig -a <action> [-f <file name>]

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, reset or restore NAS configuration

## Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) List NAS settings
	reset	Reset NAS all setting
	restore	Restore NAS setting
-f <file name=""></file>		Specify which file to restore to.
		Only valid for restore action
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
nasconfig -a list
nasconfig -a reset
nasconfig -a restore -f testfile
```

# nasshare

#### Usage

```
nasshare [-a action] [-i <nasshare id>] [-v]
```

```
nasshare -a list [-i <nasshare id>] [-v]
```

nasshare -a add -p <pool id> -s "<list of nasshare params>"

nasshare -a mod -i <nasshare id> -s "<list of nasshare params>"

nasshare -a del -i <nasshare id>

nasshare -a mount -i <nasshare id>

nasshare -a unmount -i <nasshare id>

#### Summary

The nasshare command allow user to view, add, delete, modify, mount and un-mount NAS share.

-a <action></action>		Specifies which action to perform.
	list	(Default) List NAS share information.
	add	Add a NAS share.
	del	Delete an existing NAS share.
	mod	Change the settings for a NAS share.
	mount	Mount NAS share.
	unmount	Un-mount NAS share.
-p <pool id=""></pool>		The disk pool ID. Valid values are 0-255.
		Only valid for add or list action.
-i <na< td=""><td>asshare id&gt;</td><td>The NAS share ID.</td></na<>	asshare id>	The NAS share ID.

-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify what options to change.
	Only valid for add or mod action.
namo	The name of the NAS Share
Talle	The flame of the NAS Share.
capacity	Used to specify the capacity of NAS Share.
	For add action, if not specified with thinprov setting enabled. It means to
	use the max available capacity of the pool. For mod action, it means to
	extend capacity of the NAS share. It must be larger than original capacity.
recsize	NAS share record size. 4KB to 1MB, default is 128KB
	For richmedia, it is 1MB.
sync=	Sync mode.
standard	(Default)
always	
disabled	
logbias=	Slog behavior
latency	(Default)
throughput	
thinprov=	Thin-provision supported or not.
enable	
disable	
-v Verbose mode. U	sed with -a list.
V Enchle pop intere	ntivo modo

-у

Enable non-interactive mode.

```
nasshare -a list -v
nasshare -a add -p 1 -s "name=sd, capacity=10gb"
nasshare -a mod -i 1 -s "name=sd2, capacity=20gb"
nasshare -a del -i 1
nasshare -a mount -i 1
nasshare -a unmount -i 1
```

## net

#### Usage

```
net [-a <action>] [-t <type>] [-f <protocol family>] [-c <ctrl ID>] [-p <portid>] [-s "<list of settings>"] [-m] [-v]
```

```
net -a mod -t port -s "<list of settings>"
```

```
net -a mod -t portal [-f <protocol family>] -s "<list of settings>"
```

```
net -a mod -t portal -m -c <ctrl ID> [-f <protocol family>] -s "<list of settings>"
```

```
net -a enable -t port
```

net -a enable -t portal [-m] [-c <ctrl ID>] -f <protocol family>

#### Summary

Net is used to display the TCP/IP specific information for the management port and portal. Information such as IP addresses and subnetmask can be displayed or changed. Support for DHCP and DNS can be configured here as well.

Most often this command will be used during initial setup to either setup a controller management IP address or to display what DHCP assigned IP address the enclosure is using.

-a <a< th=""><th>ction&gt;</th><th>Which action to</th><th>o perform.</th></a<>	ction>	Which action to	o perform.
	list		(Default) Displays a list of IP configurations.
	mod		To modify current network settings.
	enable		To enable IPv4/IPv6 for portal type. To enable IO support for port type.
	disable		To disable IPv4/IPv6for portal type. To disable IO support for port type.
-t <ty< td=""><td>pe&gt;</td><td></td><td></td></ty<>	pe>		
	nort		
	portal		(Defaults)
-m	P		Physical portal IP configurations.
			This option must be specified in maintenance mode
-c <c< td=""><td>rl ID&gt;</td><td></td><td>Specifies the controller ID. When the action is to modify setting and -c is</td></c<>	rl ID>		Specifies the controller ID. When the action is to modify setting and -c is
			not specified, the value is default to be the current controller id.
-p <p< td=""><td>ort ID&gt;</td><td></td><td>Specifies the port ID.</td></p<>	ort ID>		Specifies the port ID.
-f <pr< td=""><td>otocol family</td><td>y&gt;</td><td>To specify which protocol family will be modified, enabled or disabled.</td></pr<>	otocol family	y>	To specify which protocol family will be modified, enabled or disabled.
	ipv4		(Default)IPv4.
	ipv6		IPv6.
-у			Execute command in non-interactive mode.
			Only valid for disable, mod action.
-s "<(	option>= <va< td=""><td>lue&gt;"</td><td>List the various settings for the MGMT ports and portals.</td></va<>	lue>"	List the various settings for the MGMT ports and portals.
			These options are comma separated.
			Works only with modify command.

The following settings apply to portal. Requires -t portal or -t portal -m and -c <controllerr id> options.

ip=	Specify the primary IP address.
ipmask=	Specify the primary subnet mask.
gateway=	Specify the gateway.
dhcp=	Enable or disable DHCP support.
	Currently only supported for ipv4.
enable	
disable	
Followings are global settings ap	oply to portal. Requires -t portal option.
primarydns=	Set an IP address of the primary DNS server.
secondarydns=	Set an IP address of the secondary DNS server.
autodns=	Obtain DNS from DHCP server. Only valid when
	DHCP is enabled on the default route portal.
enable	
disable	
defaultroute=	Default route on which portal type.
floatingip	
staticip	
ioportal	
ctrl1portalid=	Default route portal ID on controller1. Valid for defaultroute as ioportal.
ctrl2portalid=	Default route portal ID on controller2. Valid for defaultroute as ioportal.

wol=	Enable or disable Wake On LAN support.		
	enable		
	disable		
The following settings apply to port. Requires -t port, -c <controllerr id=""> and -p <port id=""> options.</port></controllerr>			
jumbofran	e = Enable or Disable the jumbo frame of the port.		
ena disa	ble		
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.		

net *shows a list of floating IP info*
net -m *shows a list of static IP info*
net -a enable -t port *enable IO support
net -a enable -t portal -f ipv4
net -a enable -t portal -m -c 1 -f ipv4
net -a mod -m -c 1 -s "ip=10.0.0.2"
net -a mod -f ipv4 -s "ip=192.168.1.10, ipmask=255.255.255.0"
net -a mod -t portal -s "autodns=enable, wol=disable"
net -a mod -t port -c 1 -p 1 -s "jumboframe=enable"

# ntp

## Usage

ntp [-a <action>] ntp -a list ntp -a mod -s "<list of settings>" ntp -a test -t <time server> ntp -a sync

## Summary

The ntp command enables a user to view NTP status, add an NTP server, modify NTP settings, test the NTP server connection, and synchronize subsystem time with the NTP server.

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.		
	list	(Default) Displays NTP information.		
	mod	Change the settings for NTP.		
	test	Test time server.		
	sync	Sync time with time server.		
-s "<(	option>= <value>"</value>	Used to specify what options to change.		
ntp=		Enable and disable ntp service.		
	enable			
	disable			
server1=		Specific to the time servers.		
serve	er2=			
serve	er3=			
-t <time server=""></time>		Specifies the time server to test		
		Used with -a test. Returns only failure reports.		

```
ntp -a list
ntp -a mod -s "server1=ABC.123.XYZ" (adds a NTP server)
ntp -a mod -s "ntp=enable, server1=ABC.123.XYZ"
ntp -a test -t ABC.123.XYZ
ntp -a sync
```

# pair

#### Usage

pair -a <action> [-r <remote ip>] [-w <wwn>]

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, add, modify or delete pair.

#### **Options**:

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) List pair information.
add	Add pair.
mod	mod pair.
del	del pair
-r <remote ip=""></remote>	Remote subsys ip.
-w <wwn></wwn>	Remote subsys wwn.

```
pair -a list
pair -a add -r 10.20.30.40
pair -a mod -w 1000-2000-3000-4000
```

# password

#### Usage

```
password [-u <username>] [-t<type>] [-p<protocol>]
```

#### Summary

Allows a user to change their password. A normal (non super user) user will never use the -u option, as they are allowed only to change their password. For any user who wants to change its own password, it will be first prompted for their old password before inputting their new password.

For a super management user, the -u option can be used to change the password of other users. When changing the password of another user, the old password is not required.

Maximum password length is 31 characters, no spaces.

-u <username></username>	Whose password to change. Current management user is the default
-t <type></type>	Specified the user type.
mgmt	(Default)Change management user password.
snmp	Change snmp user password.
nas	Change nas user password.
-p <protocol></protocol>	Specifies the secure protocol type. For snmp user only.
auth	Change authentication protocol password.
priv	Change privacy protocol password.

password
old password:*****
new password:*****
Retry password:*****
password -u snmpuser -t snmp -p auth
<pre>Input auth password:*****</pre>
Retype auth password:*****
password -u nasuser -t nas
new password:*****
Retry password:*****

# pcie

# Usage

pcie [-a list] [-h]

# Summary

This command will display PCIE slot information for the controllers.

# Options

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays a list of PCIE slot info

pcie	Displays a	list of	PCIE	slot	information

# pdm

#### Usage

pdm [-a <action>] [-I <PoolId>] [-s <SeqNo>] pdm -a start -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> -p <PdId> pdm -a stop -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> pdm -a pause -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> pdm -a resume -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo>

#### Summary

This command allows the user to start, stop, pause or resume a PDM. PDM (Predictive Data Migration) is an operation to replace an drive in the pool, which has a PFA condition, with a destination physical drive. The destination physical drive can be an unconfigured drive, a global spare, or a dedicated spare to this pool. During PDM, the data on the PFA drive will be transferred to the destination drive while the IO remains going on. After PDM, the destination drive becomes part of the pool; the PFA drive will become unconfigured and PFA condition will remain on. The PFA drive cannot be used for further configuration until the PFA condition is cleared by the user. To clear the PFA condition of a physical drive, please refer to phydrv command with option -a clear.

-a <a< th=""><th>ction&gt;</th><th>Which action to perform.</th></a<>	ction>	Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Displays the current active or paused PDM(s) and their
		status(es).
	start	Starts a manual PDM.
	stop	Stops a PDM.
	pause	Pauses a PDM.
	resume	Resumes a paused PDM.
-l <p< td=""><td>ool ID&gt;</td><td>Specifies which pool to perform PDM action on.</td></p<>	ool ID>	Specifies which pool to perform PDM action on.
-s <s< td=""><td>equence Num&gt;</td><td>Specifies the sequence number of the physical drive that has a PFA</td></s<>	equence Num>	Specifies the sequence number of the physical drive that has a PFA
		condition.
-p <f< td=""><td>PD ID&gt;</td><td>Specifies physical drive ID of the destination drive.</td></f<>	PD ID>	Specifies physical drive ID of the destination drive.

```
pdm
pdm -a start -l 0 -s 2 -p 10
pdm -a stop -l 0 -s 2
```

# periodsnap

#### Usage

periodsnap -a <action> [-t <type>] [-d <source id>] -s <list of settings>

periodsnap -a add -t <type> -d <source ids> -s <list of settings>

periodsnap -a mod -i <task id> [-t <type>] [-d <source ids>] -s <list of settings>

periodsnap -a del -i <task id> [-f]

#### Summary

Periodsnap is used to display all periodic snapshot tasks, as well as to allow the user to add, modify or delete date and time of the periodic snapshot tasks.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays information of periodic snapshot.
add	Create a new periodic snapshot task.
	The max number of periodic snapshot task is 64.
mod	Modify a exist periodic snapshot task.
del	Delete a exist periodic snapshot task. By default all the snapshots
	generated by the task will be removed.
-i <schedule id=""></schedule>	Specifies the periodic snapshot ID for list/modify/delete action.

-t <source type=""/>	Specify source storage type for list or add periodic snapshot task.
nasshare	
volume	(Default for add.)
-d <source ids=""/>	Source storage IDs. Nasshare IDs or volume IDs. Valid for add/modify
	action. For multiple value, divided by ',' or '~'. Note that all the nasshares
	or volumes must in the same pool.
-f	Do not remove all the periodic snapshots generated by the task. Used
	with -a del action.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify periodic snapshot task settings.
status=	Specifies status type of task.
enable	
disable	(Default)
recurtype=	Specifies recurrence type of task.
daily	(Default)
weekly	
interval=	Specifies the minutes between two snapshot copies.
	This option is valid for Daily recurrence type.
	The range is [5, 10, 15, 30, 60, 120, 240, 360, 480, 720, 1440].
	Default is 60.
dow=	Day of Week. This is for Weekly recurrence type task.
	The range is [Sun Mon Tues Wed Thur Fri Sat].
	For multiple value, divided by space.
	Default is Sun.

starthour=	Used to specify start hour of task.
	The range is 0-23.
endhour=	Used to specify end hour of task.
	This option is valid for Daily recurrence type.
	The range is 0-23.
keepnum=	Keep the number of periodic snapshot copies.
Verbose mode. Used with -a list.	

-V

```
periodsnap -a add -t volume -d 1 -s "recurtype=daily,interval=60, starthour=1,
endhour=22, keepnum=5"
periodsnap -a mod -i 1 -s "status=disable"
periodsnap -a del -i 1
```

# phydrv

## Usage

phydrv [-a <action>] [-p <PdId>] [-c <Pd count>] [-v]

phydrv -a mod -p <PdId> -s "<list of settings>"

phydrv -a locate -p <Pdld>

phydrv -a online -p <PdId>

phydrv -a offline -p <Pdld>

phydrv -a clear -t <condition type> -p <PdId>

#### Summary

The phydrv command displays physical drive information, changes physical drive settings, locates individual drives, and forces a drive to an online or offline state.

**Note:** Forcing a drive online should only be done in extreme conditions. It will almost always cause data corruption.

a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays all physical drives in the enclosure, their make, model
	number, and array they belong to. Their status is also shown.
mod	Allows the user to make modifications to the physical drive settings.
locate	Allows the user to flash an LED for physically identifying the location of
	the drive.
offline	Allows the user to force a drive offline if it is misbehaving.
clear	Allows the user to clear a drive's past condition.
-p <pd id=""></pd>	Specifies the physical drive ID.

-c <count></count>	Used when more than one physical drive is to be specified and their ID
	numbers are sequential.
-1	Lised with -a list option to display external drive information
•	
-t <condition type=""></condition>	When used with the -a clear option, this option specifies which type of
	condition to clear.
pfa	Used to clear the PFA condition on the drive.
staleconfig	Used to clear the stale configuration on the drive.
-d <drive type=""></drive>	When used with the -a mod option, this option specifies which drive type
	settings to modify. It defaults to be all if -d is not specified.
sata	SATA related setting(s); writecache, rlacache, dmamode
5010	The SATA settings apply to all SATA physical drives
	The SATA settings apply to all SATA physical unives.
sas	SAS related setting(s): writecache, rlacache, readcache.
	The SAS settings apply to all SAS physical drives.
all	Apply to both SATA and SAS drives where is applicable.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specifies which physical drive settings to change.
alias=	A user specified name used to identify a physical drive. Currently, this is
	the only setting that is specific to individual drive. It can only be set on a
	configured drive. It can be up to 32 characters long, containing alpha-
	numeric characters, blank spaces and underscores. The beginning and
	ending blank spaces will be discarded.

The following	aattinga	are alchel t	o oomo i	tune of r	hypigal	driven
The lollowing	seminus	are giobar i	o same	ivbe oi t	JUVSICAL	unves.
			• • • • • • • •	., e e e r		

writed	cache=	Enables or disables write cache on the physical drive(s).
	enable	
	disable	
rlacad	che=	Enables or disables read look ahead cache on the physical drive(s).
	enable	
	disable	
temp	pollint=	Drive temperature polling interval in seconds.
		(15255) If value is 0, polling is disabled. For high availability products
		only.
mediu	umerrorthreshold=	(04294967294) Medium error threshold. If the threshold is exceeded,
		the physical drive will be marked as dead. The default value is 0,
		indicating that physical drive will not be marked as dead for medium
		errors.

The following settings are only for SATA drives:

dmamode=	For SATA drive only. Attempt to negotiate at the specified DMA transfer mode.
	If a DMA transfer mode cannot be negotiate, the next slower mode will
	be attempted until a mode can be negotiated
	(udma6, udma5udma0, mdma 2mdma0).
udma0	Ultra DMA Mode 0
udma1	Ultra DMA Mode 1
udma2	Ultra DMA Mode 2
udma3	Ultra DMA Mode 3
udma4	Ultra DMA Mode 4
udma5	Ultra DMA Mode 5
udma6	Ultra DMA Mode 6
mdma0	Multi DMA Mode 0
mdma1	Multi DMA Mode 1
mdma2	Multi DMA Mode 2
The following settings are only f	or SAS drives:
readcache=	Applied to SAS drive only. Enables or disables read cache on the physical
	drive(s).

enable

disable

-V

Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
phydrv

phydrv -v

phydrv -l -v

phydrv -a locate -p 9

phydrv -a mod -s "writecache=enable,rlacache=enable"

phydrv -a offline -p 8

phydrv -a online -p 8

phydrv -a clear -p 8
```

# ping

## Usage

```
ping -t <PortType> [-l <CtrlId>] [-p <PortId>] -i <ipAddr | DestinationId> [-d <DestinationType>]
```

## Summary

Allows the user to ping another network device from the management port or FC port to verify that the device is able to be "seen" by the enclosure.

# Options

-t <port type=""></port>	The type of port to ping through. If -t is not specified, the default value is
	mgmt port.
iscsi	iSCSI port. iSCSI host interface product only.
mgmt	Management port. For embedded only.
fc	FC port. FC host interface product only.
-l <ctrlld></ctrlld>	Controller id. It is required when port type is fc.
-p <port id=""></port>	Physical port id. Port id is required when port type is fc.
-i <ip address="" destinationid=""  =""></ip>	IP address to ping destination identifier for fc port.
-d <destination type=""></destination>	The type of destination for the ping. It is required when port type is fc.
FCID	
WWPN	

## Examples

ping -t mgmt -i 192.168.1.1 # for embedded
ping -t iscsi -l 1 -p 1 -i 192.168.1.1 -c 5
ping -t fc -l 1 -p 1 -d WWPN -i 26-03-00-01-55-60-01-0e

# pool

## Usage

pool [-a <action>] [-i <pool id>] [-v] pool -a add [-s "<list of pool params>"] -p <pd id list> pool -a del -i <pool id list> pool -a mod -i <pool id> -s "<list of pool params>" pool -a expand -p <pd id list>

#### Summary

Pool is the main command for performing advanced configuration maintenance and is used when performing tasks that are directly related to pool. It can be used to list, create, modify, delete, expand or locate the pool(s) configuration in the subsystem.

-a <action></action>	Specifies which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays a summary of all or a specific or a specified number of
	pools.
mod	Modify pool name.
add	Create new Pool by specific drives, RAID level and so on.
del	Delete an existing pool.
expand	Expand pool. The pool created by external drive can expand only with
	external drive. The pool created by HDD physical drive can expand with
	external drive.
locate	Allows the user to flash the LED for physically identifying the location of
	the pool.
accept	Accept an incomplete pool.
-i <pool id=""></pool>	The pool ID. Valid for list, mod, del and expand action.

-t <drive type=""></drive>	Specify the type of drive.
pd	Physicsl drive
ed	External drive
-p <pd id="" list=""></pd>	Used to specify which drives are to be used in a pool.
	Used in conjunction with -a add or -a expand.
	Drive IDs can be used singly or separated by comma.
	Additionally a sequential group of drives can be specified by placing a $\sim$
	between numbers such as 1~6.
	This will include drives 1,2,3,4,5,6.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify settings for an pool. This is used when creating (add) or modifying (mod) an pool. These options are separated by commas.
name=	A user specified name used to identify an pool.
	It can be up to 32 characters long, containing alpha-numeric characters,
	blank spaces and underscores. The beginning and ending blank spaces
	will be discarded. Valid for add or mod action
type=	Used to specify the type of pool. Default is advanced if it is supported,
	otherwise default is standard.

standard

advanced

raid=	Used to specify the RAID level of the pool Only valid for add action with
	physical drive type.
0	Striping.
1	Mirroring on two drives.
5	Parity, requiring 3 or more drives.
10	Mirroring on even number of drives.
50	Striping on multiple RAID 5, requiring 6 or more drives.
6	Allow two drive failure, requiring 4 or more drives.
60	Striping on multiple RAID 6, requiring 8 or more drives.
stripe=	Used to specify the stripe size.
	The possible parameters are 64KB, 128KB, 256KB, 512KB, and 1MB. If
	not specified, the default 64K will be used.
	Only valid for add action with physical drive type
sector=	Used to specify the desirable sector size.
	The possible parameters are 512B, 1KB, 2KB, and 4KB.
	It must not be greater than the Stripe size.
	It will be auto-adjusted not to exceed the max supported sector size of the
	controller, please see controller info
	If not specified, for advanced type, the default 4KB will be used; for
	standard type, the default 512B will be used
	Only valid for add action with physical drive type.
Axle=	RAID 50, 3 to 32 drives per axle.
	RAID 60, 4 to 32 drives per axle.
	Valid for add action with physical drive type or expand action on the pool
	created by physicsl drive with new drives is physical drive too.

ctrlid	=	Used to specify which controller the pool is preferred for LUN affinity. Valid
		value is 1 or 2. If value is not specified, LUN affinity will be auto balanced.
		Valid for add or mod action.
		The following settings are global to all pools: all pools:
	capthreshold=	(7595) Pool capacity nearly full warning threshold.
		Valid for add or mod action.
	optimizedapptype =	Optimized application type.
	richmedia	
	others	
-f		Force delete the pool.
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list action.
-у		Enable non-interactive mode.

```
pool -v -i 1
pool -a add -s "name=MyAxxx, type=advanced, raid=5" -t pd -p 1,3,5~9
pool -a add -s "name=MyAxxx" -t ed -p 1,2
pool -a mod -i 1 -s "name=xxx"
pool -a del -i 3
pool -a expand -i 1 -t pd -p 1,3,5~10 -s "axle=4"
pool -a expand -i 2 -t ed -p 1,2
pool -a locate -i 1
pool -a accept -i 1
```

# protocol

## Usag:

```
protocol [-a <action>] [-d <ID>] [-t <type>] [-n <name>] [-s <settings>]
```

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, modify, reset, enable or disable global protocol service, as well as to list, modify, enable or disable sharing protocol on the share disk, snapshot or clone.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default)List settings, service status and running status of global protocol
	service or protocol status on share disk.
mod	modify global protocol service settings
reset	reset protocol settings of global protocol service. If -n not specified, it
	means all services.
enable	enable global protocol service or protocol settings on the share disk,
	snapshot or clone
disable	disable global protocol service or protocol settings on the share disk,
	snapshot or clone
-t <type></type>	
nasshare	
snapshot	
clone	
-d <id></id>	nas share ID, snapshot ID or clone ID. If not specified for mod action, it
	means global protocol service
-n <service name=""></service>	protocol service name
ftp	
nfs	

	smb	
	tm	Only used with -d specified
	http	
-s " <c< td=""><td>option&gt;=<value>"</value></td><td>Used to specify global protocol service settings followings are valid for</td></c<>	option>= <value>"</value>	Used to specify global protocol service settings followings are valid for
		FTP type
	encryat-	
	encrypt-	
	standard	
	explicit	
	implicit	
	sftp	
	port =	connection port (1 ~ 65535). Default as 21.
	startport=	start of passive connection port
	endport=	End of passive connection port
	charset =	Character set type
	utf8	
	ja_jp	
	ko_kr	
	zh_cn	
	zh_tw	
	dwrate =	Download rate of all user
	uprate =	Upload rate of all user followings are valid for NFS type
	port=	Mountd port (1024 ~ 65533). Default as 56789.
	count=	Number of NFS server. It can be 8, 16, 32, 64 or 128.
		Default as 32.
	following are valid for SME	3 type
	desc=	Description displayed via SMB.
	workgroup=	SMB workgroup name displayed for SMB client

	ntacl=	Windows NT ACL support.
	yes	
	no	
	smbadmin=	SMB manager account. Only can modified for LDAP/OD type domain
		mode.
	followings are valid for HTTP type	
	httpport=	HTTP connection port. Default is 8088.
	httpsport=	HTTPS connection port. Default is 8089.
-V	Verbose mode.	Jsed with -a list.
-у	Enable non-intera	active mode.

```
protocol -a list
protocol -t nasshare -d 2
protocol -t nasshare -d 2 -n ftp
protocol -a reset -n ftp
protocol -a enable -n ftp
protocol -a enable -t nasshare -d 2 -n ftp
protocol -a disable -t nasshare -d 2 -n ftp
protocol -a mod -n smb -s "workgroup=testgrp"
```

# ptiflash

#### Usage

```
ptiflash [-a <action>] [-t] [-s <ServerIP>] -f <FileName> [-p <PortNum>]
```

```
[-e <encl id>] [-i <ctrl id>] [-n] [-d <pd id>] [-l] [-y] [-v]
```

#### Summary

This is the flash utility for the controller and physical drives. It is used to flash images such as firmware or software for controllers and drive firmware image for physical drives. For embedded, in order to update the flash image, the user must have a TFTP server setup that is accessible from the enclosure's management port and the flash image located on the TFTP server. For in-band, the flash image located on the local host must be accessible.

Please note that only one flash process should be running at one time.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
start	(Default) To start the flash process.
versioninfo	To get the version and build information of running images of all
	controllers or the specified controller.
-t	Indicates that TFTP get method is to be used to obtain the file from
	a TFTP server.
-s <servername ipaddress></servername ipaddress>	Specifies the hostname or IP address of the TFTP server which contains the image file.
-f <filename></filename>	Specifies the filename of the flash image. Include the folder name
	A flash image could be either a controller flash image or a physical
	drive firmware update image.
-p <port number=""></port>	Specifies the port number of the TFTP server. If no port number is
	given, the default value that will be used is 69.
-e <encl id=""></encl>	Specifies the Enclosure ID.
----------------------------	---
	Only used with -a versioninfo option.
	If not specified, default value is all enclosures.
-i <ctrl id=""></ctrl>	Specifies the Controller ID.
	Only used with -a versioninfo option.
	Enclosure id is required when controller id is specified.
	If not specified, default value is all controllers.
-V	Verbose mode. Only used with -a versioninfo option. To show the version
	and build information of all the flash images of all controllers or the
	specified controller.
-n	Start the flash process/image update in NDIU mode.
	This mode is applicable only if the system is in redundant state.
	Default mode of flash is DIU (disruptive) mode.
-d <device id=""></device>	Specifies the physical drive IDs.
	Only for physical drive firmware update.
	If not specified, all the physical drives, which are supported by the
	specified physical drive firmware, are selected.
-1	Display the status of currently running flash process.
-y	Enable non-interactive mode.

```
ptiflash -t -s 192.168.1.1 -f fw_multi.ptif -p 69 # for embedded
ptiflash -f fw_multi_20031010.ptif # for in-band
ptiflash -1 # list currently running flash process
ptiflash -t -s 192.168.1.1 -f fw_multi.ptif -n # for NDIU mode
ptiflash -t -s 192.168.1.1 -f pd_fw.ptif -d 1,2
# update the pd firmware for pd 1 and 2 using the pd_fw.ptif image.
```

# quota

## Usage

```
quota [-a <action>] [-d <storage id>] [-t <type>] [-s <setting>] [-v]
```

quota -a set -d <storage id> -t <type> -s "<list of settings>"

quota -a refresh -d <storage id> -t <type>

quota -a cancel -d <storage id> -t <type>

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, set, cancel or refresh the Quota settings on the NAS Share.

Note that only one set operation is allowed at the same time on different UIs.

-a <action></action>		Specifies which action to perform
	list	(Default) Displays the quota information
	set	Set quota setting
	refresh	Refresh Quota by given NAS Share/Clone ID
	cancel	Cancel the Quota settings operation hold by others
-t <ty< td=""><td>pe&gt;</td><td>Storage type. If not specified for list action.</td></ty<>	pe>	Storage type. If not specified for list action.
	nasshare	
-d <s1< td=""><td>torage id&gt;</td><td>NAS Share ID.</td></s1<>	torage id>	NAS Share ID.
-s "op	otion=value"	Only valid for set action
	role=	Role type.
	user	
	group	
	name=	User name or group name based on role type.
	limit=	Specify the quota limited size. If it is 0 means no limitation.
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
quota -a list -d 1 -t nasshare
quota -a set -d 1 -t nasshare -s "role=user, name=a, limit=1Gb"
quota -a set -d 1 -t nasshare -s "role=user, name=a, limit=0"
quota -a refresh -d 1 -t nasshare
quota -a cancel -d 1 -t nasshare
```

# replication

#### Usage

replication [-a <action>] [-i <ID>] [-p <pool ID>] [-s <settings>]

#### Summary

The replication command allows the user to replicate volume into another pool. Only with thin-provision disabled volume can be used to replicate. During replication in progress, source volume cannot be expanded or removed; destination volume disallowed to do any operations.

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Displays the replication status.
	start	Start a specific replication status.
	stop	Stop the replication
	pause	Pause the replication
	resume	Resume a paused replication
-t <lo< td=""><td>cation&gt;</td><td>Replication location. Only valid for -a stop action.</td></lo<>	cation>	Replication location. Only valid for -a stop action.
	local	(Default)
	10001	
	remote	

-i <id></id>	Source or destination volume ID for stop action. Source volume ID for	
	other actions. When used with -a stop action. For local location, it means	
	source volume ID. For remote location, if role is source, it means source	
	volume ID; if role is destination, it means destination volume ID.	
-n <nool id=""></nool>	Destination pool ID	
	Only valid for -a start specified	
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify replication settings.	
	Only valid for -a start specified	
name=	Destination volume name.	
mode=	mode method. Only valid for remote replication.	
active-passive	(Default)	
active-active		
syncmode=	sync mode method	
async		
semi-sync		
sync	(Default)	
period=	Period of sync cycle.Unit is hour(s).	
0	always sync.	
1		
2		
4		
6		
8		
12		
24		

	srcip=	source portal ip.Only valid for remote replication.
	dstip=	destination portal ip. Only valid for remote replication.
	srcwwn=	source subsys wwn.Only valid for remote replication. It's optional when
		start remote replication.
	dstwwn=	destination subsys wwn.Only valid for remote replication.
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.
-у		Enable non-interactive mode.

# rb

## Usage

rb [-a <action>] [-l <PoolId>] [-s <SeqNo>]

- rb -a start -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> -p <PdId>
- rb -a stop -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo>
- rb -a pause -I <PoolId> -s <SeqNo>
- rb -a resume -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo>

### Summary

This command allows the user to check on the progress of a running or paused Rebuild as well as to check on the progress of a running Rebuild..

### Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.	
	list	(Default) Displays the current active and their status(es).	
	start	Starts a manual rebuild.	
	stop	Stops a rebuild.	
	pause	Pauses a rebuild.	
	resume	Resumes a paused rebuild.	
-l <pc< td=""><td>ool ID&gt;</td><td>Specifies which Pool to perform rebuild action on.</td></pc<>	ool ID>	Specifies which Pool to perform rebuild action on.	
-S <s6< td=""><td>equence Num&gt;</td><td>Specifies the sequence number of the physical drive that was marked offline and will used for the rebuild.</td></s6<>	equence Num>	Specifies the sequence number of the physical drive that was marked offline and will used for the rebuild.	
-p <pd id=""></pd>		Identifies the physical drive ID that will be used in the rebuild process.	

```
rb -a start -l 0 -s 2 -p 10
rb -a stop -l 0 -s 2
```

# rc

## Usage

rc [-a <action>] [-l <LdId>] rc -a start -l <LdId> [-n] [-p] rc -a stop -l <LdId> rc -a pause -l <Ldld> rc -a resume -l <LdId>

## Summary

The rc command is used to start and stop a Redundancy Check and monitor the progress of a running Redundancy

## Check.

## Options

-a <action></action>	Specifies action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays active and paused Redundancy Checks and their
status.	
start	Starts a Redundancy Check.
stop	Stops a Redundancy Check.
pause	Pauses a Redundancy Check.
resume	Resumes a paused Redundancy Check.
-l <pool id=""></pool>	Specifies the Pool ID on which to run redundancy check.
-n	Do not fix inconsistent data. Specifying this option will cause redundancy
	check to run without correcting inconsistent data. All inconsistency
errors	found will still be reported.
-р	Pause on error. This option causes Redundancy Check to pause when it
	encounters inconsistent data. The default is to continue on error.

```
rc
rc -a start -l 3 -n -p
rc -a start -l 3
rc -a stop -l 2
```

# sasdiag

## Usage

sasdiag -a <action> -e <EnclosureId> -i <expanderId> [-p <PHYId>]

## Summary

Diagnostic command for getting SMP discovery info, getting PHY error log, or clear the error log. For products that support multiple enclosures only.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
discover	Display SMP general discovery information.
errorlog	Display error log on a certain expander.
clearerrlog	Clear error log on a certain PHY.
-I <phy location=""></phy>	The location where PHY resides. If -I is not specified, the default value is
	expander.
expander	
c2cport	
-e <enclosure id=""></enclosure>	Used to specify which enclosure ID.
-i <expander id=""></expander>	Used to specify which expander ID.
-p <phy id=""></phy>	Used to specify which PHY ID you wish to issue clear errorlog.
	Only used with -a clearerrlog option.

```
sasdiag -a discover -l expander -e 1 -i 1
sasdiag -a errorlog -l expander -e 1 -i 1
sasdiag -a clearerrlog -l expander -e 1 -i 1 -p 1
sasdiag -a errorlog -l c2cport
```

## SC

### Usage

```
sc [-a <action>] [-i <SpareId>]
```

sc -a start [-i <SpareId>]

## Summary

The sc command starts a Spare Check and monitors the status of a running Spare Check.

### Options

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays Spare Check status.
start	Starts the Spare Check.
-i <spare id=""></spare>	Specifies the spare ID on which to run Spare Check. Valid value range is
	0~255.

```
sc
sc -a start -i 3
```

# session

## Usage

session

session -h (this command)

# Summary

This command lists the current active sessions.

## Examples

session

# shutdown

## Usage

shutdown -a <action> [-i <ctrlId>

shutdown -a shutdown

shutdown -a restart

shutdown -a restart -i 2

shutdown -a shutdown -i 1

## Summary

Shutdown is the command used to shutdown or restart a controller or subsystem.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
shutdown	To shutdown the controller or subsystem.
restart	To restart the controller or subsystem.
-i <ctrlld></ctrlld>	Controller ID or subsystem. If -i is not specified, the default value is
	subsystem.
1	Controller 1.
2	Controller 2.
subsys	Subystem.

# smart

## Usage

smart [-a <action>] [-p <PdId>]

# Options

-a <acti< th=""><th>on&gt;</th><th>Which action to perform.</th></acti<>	on>	Which action to perform.
li	st	(Default) Displays the status of S.M.A.R.T. diagnostic for phydrv drive(s).
е	nable	Enable S.M.A.R.T.
d	lisable	Disable S.M.A.R.T.
-p <pdl< td=""><td>d&gt;</td><td>Specifies physical drive ID of the destination drive.</td></pdl<>	d>	Specifies physical drive ID of the destination drive.
		If not specified, the destination drive will be all physical drives.
-1	V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

## Summary

S.M.A.R.T diagnostic for physical drives.

```
smart -v
smart -a list -p 1
smart -a enable -p 1
```

# snapshot

## Usage

snapshot [-a <action>] -i <snapshot ID> -t <type> -d <id> [-n <name>]

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, add, modify, delete, export, unexport, or rollback a snapshot. Export or

unexport only valid for volume type.

Note: after rollback a snapshot, the data will be gone.

Please specify -f option if need rollback to the older one.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) List snapshot information.
add	add a snapshot
mod	modify name of snapshot
del	delete a snapshot
export	export a snapshot which is based on volume type
unexport	Un-export a snapshot
mount	mount a snapshot which is based on nasshare type
unmount	Un-mount a snapshot which is based on nasshare type
rollback	Rollback a snapshot
-i <snapshot id=""></snapshot>	Snapshot ID
-t <type></type>	Source type
volume	(Default)
nasshare	
-d <id></id>	Source ID. For volume source type, it is Volume ID;
	For nasshare source type, it is nasshare ID.

-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Used to specify what options to change.
	Only valid for add or mod action.
name=	snapshot name.
-f	Force delete the snapshot or rollback to older one.
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.
-у	Enable non-interactive mode.

```
snapshot -a list
snapshot -a add -t volume -d 1 -s "name=testname"
snapshot -a mod -i 1 -s "name=testname"
snapshot -a del -i 1
snapshot -a export -i 1
snapshot -a unexport -i 1
snapshot -a mount -i 1
snapshot -a unmount -i 1
snapshot -a rollback -i 1
```

### spare

#### Usage

```
spare [-a <action>]
```

```
spare -a list [-i <SpareId>] [-d <PoolId>] [-v]
```

```
spare -a add [-i <SpareId>] -p <PdId> [-t g|d] [-r y|n] [-d <PooIId list>] [-s "<list of settings>"]
```

spare -a del -i <SpareId>

#### Summary

Spare is the command used to display all hot spare drives as well as to create and delete hot spare drives.

A Global hot spare is the most generic form. A global hot spare drive can replace any drive from a pool of equal size or less.

A dedicated hot spare is a spare drive that has been assigned specifically to one or more pools. It is used to replace only drives that are in these assigned pools. If a drive is marked offline that was not in one of the assigned pools, the dedicated spare will not replace that drive. This feature can used for prioritizing pools which may have a greater need to survive disk failures.

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays a list of hot spare drives.
add	Adds new hot spare drives.
del	Deletes a hot spare drive.
-i <spare id=""></spare>	Specifies the ID of the spare drive.
-p <pd id=""></pd>	Specifies the ID of the physical drive. Requires the -a add option to configure a drive as a spare.
-d <pool id="" list="" or="" pool=""></pool>	When used with -a list, it is used to specify a pool id. The result of the list will be the global spares and the dedicated spares to this pool. When used
	with other actions, it is used to specify the ids list of the pools to which the
	spare is dedicated.

-t <type></type>	Type of hot spare to manipulate.
g	A global hot spare will replace any drive from a redundant pool of same
	size or smaller.
d	A dedicated hot spare will only replace drives from pools in which the
	spare is associated with. Drives that are being replaced must be of the
	same size or smaller.
-r <revertible></revertible>	Whether the spare drive is revertible or commited.
V	Revertible
у	
n	Committed.
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

```
spare
spare -a add -p 14 -t g
spare -a del -i O
```

# stats

## Usage

```
stats [-t <type>] [-i <devId>] [-c <Count>]
```

stats -a clear

## Summary

The stats command displays statistics of subsytem, controller, enclosure, physical drives, and logical drives; and resets the statistics count to zero.

## Options

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the statistics.
clear	Resets the statistics count to zero.
-t <type></type>	Specifies the device type.
ctrl	Controller.
phydrv	Physical drive.
all	All the above options.
-i <devld></devld>	Specifies the device ID. Default is the first available device ID.
-c <count></count>	Specifies the device count. Default is all devices. Used with -a list.

## Examples

stats -t phydrv -i 0 -c 5 stats -a list -t all stats -a clear

# subscription

### Usage

subscription -a <action> [-u <username>] -t <type> -s "<list of settings>"

subscription -a list

subscription -a list -v -t <type>

subscription -a enable

subscription -a disable

subscription -a mod [-u <username>] -s "<list of settings>"

subscription -a test [-u <username>]

### Summary

Subscription is used to enable or disable event notification for specific user, specify events of interest, as well as to modify the levels of severity. Users with superuser privilege can subscript for all users.

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays information of event subscription.
mod	Modify a exist event subscription.
enable	Enable event notification.
disable	Disable event notification.
test	Send a test email to the email address of specific user.
-u <username></username>	Specifies the username event subscription belongs to
	(Default) Assumes to the username of current logged in.
-t <tupe></tupe>	Specifies what type of event subscription
	opecines what type of event subscription.
	Only used for verbose list action.

shortcut	event subscription by shortcut. If the param have no value, it means that
	the severity level of underling items are different.
enclosure	event subscription by enclosure.
raid	event subscription by RAID core.
host	event subscription by host interface.
drive	event subscription by drive interface.
other	event subscription by other.

-s "<option>=<value>"

Following for shortcut type event subscription:

If params for shortcut type and corresponding underling items are both inputed in cli command. Make

sure they have the same severity	level, or it wil	l report conflict.
----------------------------------	------------------	--------------------

enclosure =	shortcut event subscription by enclosure.
raid =	shortcut event subscription by raid core.
host =	shortcut event subscription by host interface.
drive =	shortcut event subscription by drive interface.
other =	shortcut event subscription by other.

The range is (info | warning | minor | major | critical | fatal | none).

Default value is major.

Followings for enclosure type event subscription:

battery =	battery event subscription of enclosure.	
blower =	blower event subscription of enclosure.	
cu =	Cooling Unit event subscription of enclosure.	
psu =	PSU event subscription of enclosure.	
sep =	SEP event subscription of enclosure.	
temp =	temperature event subscription of enclosure.	
The range is (info   warning   minor   major   critical   fatal   none).		

Default value is major.

Followings for raid type event subscription:

ctrl =	Controller event subscription of enclosure.	
da =	Disk Array event subscription of enclosure.	
init =	Initialization blower event subscription of enclosure.	
ld =	Logical Drive cooling unit event subscription of enclosure.	
ddf =	DDF event subscription of enclosure.	
mp =	Media Patrol event subscription of enclosure.	
oce =	Online Capacity Expansion event subscription of enclosure.	
pd =	Physical Disk event subscription of enclosure.	
rm =	RAID Migaration event subscription of enclosure.	
rebuild =	Rebuild event subscription of enclosure.	
rc =	Redundancy Check event subscription of enclosure.	
smart =	SMART event subscription of enclosure.	
sync =	Synchronization event subscription of enclosure.	
subsys =	Subsystem event subscription of enclosure.	
pdm =	Predictive Data Migaration event subscription of enclosure.	
sc =	Spare Check event subscription of enclosure.	
The range is (info   warning   minor   major   critical   fatal   none).		
Default value is major.		
Followings for host type event subscription:		
hictrl =	Host Interface Controller event subscription of Host interface.	
The range is (info   warning   minor   major   critical   fatal   none).		
Default value is major.		
Followings for drive type event subscription:		
dictrl =	Drive Interface Controller event subscription of	

Drive interface.

The range is (info | warning | minor | major | critical | fatal | none).

Default value is major.

Followings for other type event subscription:

ups = UPS event subscription of other.

app = Application event subscription of other.

The range is (info | warning | minor | major | critical | fatal | none).

Default value is major.

-V

Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

### Examples

subscription -a list -t shortcut -v
subscription -a mod -u administrator -s "enclosure=info"
subscription -a mod -s "bbu=critical"
subscription -a disable -u administrator

# subsys

## Usage

```
subsys [-a <action>] [-v]
```

subsys -a mod -s "<list of settings>"

```
subsys -a lock [-r] [-t <number of minutes>]
```

subsys -a unlock [-f]

subsys -a chklock

### Summary

The subsys command is used to display and make changes to subsystem settings. This is also used to lock the subsystem so that only the current administrator can make modifications.

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays information for the specified subsystem.
mod	Modifies subsystem settings.
lock	Locks the subsystem so other users cannot apply changes.
	No changes can be made to subsystem settings by other users until the
	lock expires or the system is unlocked.
unlock	Clears a subsystem lock.
chklock	Checks the status of the lock.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	Specifies which subsystem settings to change.
alias=	A user specified name to identify the subsystem.
	It can be up to 48 characters long, containing alpha-numeric characters,
	blank spaces and underscores. The beginning and ending blank spaces
	will be discarded.

cachemirroring=	Enable and disable cache mirroring. Cache mirroring will only be available
	when redundancy type is active-active. The default value is enable if not
	specified.
enable	
disable	
-t <number mins="" of=""></number>	Used with -a lock. Number of minutes to lock the subsystem.
	Default is 30 minutes.
-r	Renew the lock timer. Used with -a lock and -t
-f	Force unlock. Only super user has the privilege to do it.
-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.

subsys
subsys -v
subsys -a mod -s "alias=MySubsystem"
subsys -a lock -t 60
subsys -a lock -r -t 35
subsys -a unlock
subsys -a chklock

# swmgt

### Usage

```
swmgt [-a <action>]
```

swmgt -a mod -n <component name> [-t <startup type>] [-s "<list of settings>]

swmgt -a start -n <component name>

swmgt -a stop -n <component name>

swmgt -a restart -n <component name>

### Summary

The swmgt command allows a user to view and modify setting of software components.

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) Displays all software components.
	start	Start a software component.
	stop	Stop a software component.
	restart	Restart a software component.
	mod	Change a component's startup type when system boots.
	add	Add trap sink for snmp, public key for ssh or recipient for netsend.
	del	Delete trap sinks for snmp, public key for ssh or recipients for netsend.
-n <co< td=""><td>omponent name&gt;</td><td>Specifies the component name to view setting, modify, start or stop.</td></co<>	omponent name>	Specifies the component name to view setting, modify, start or stop.
	email	Email notification.
	slp	Service location protocol service agent. SLP service is supported for IPv4
		protocol only.
	webserver	Web server.

	ssh	SSH.
	snmp	SNMP.
-t <s< td=""><td>startup type&gt;</td><td>Specifies the startup type.</td></s<>	startup type>	Specifies the startup type.
	automatic	Component is automatically started when system boots.
	manual	Component has to be manually started by issuing command.
-s "<	<pre><option>=<value>"</value></option></pre>	Used to specify settings for this component. This is used when modifying
		(mod). These options are comma separated.
ema	ul settinas	
onna	in oottingo	
	smtpserver=	SMTP server IP address or SMTP server name.
	serverport=	SMTP server port number.
	authentication=	SMTP server authentication.
		no
		yes
	username=	Username if using SMTP authentication.
	password=	Password if using SMTP authentication.
	senderaddr=	Sender's email address.
	subject=	Email subject.
webserver settings		
	sessiontimeout=	Session time out in minutes. Maximum 1440
.		
ssn	settings	
	port=	Port number for ssh daemon.
	sessiontimeout=	Session time out in minutes. Maximum 1440.
	maxconnection=	Max number of ssh client connection. Maximum 4.

snmp settings

	port=	IPv4 Port number.
	port6=	IPv6 Port number.
	sysname=	System name string.
	syslocation=	System location string.
	syscontact=	System contact information string.
	readcommunity=	IPv4 Read community name.
	readcommunity6=	IPv6 Read community name.
-i <inc< td=""><td>lex&gt;</td><td>Used to specify trap sink index for snmp or public key index for ssh. Only</td></inc<>	lex>	Used to specify trap sink index for snmp or public key index for ssh. Only
		valid for modify or delete trap sink, delete public key.
-p " <c< td=""><td>ption&gt;=<value>"</value></td><td>Used to specify trap sinks for snmp or public key for ssh.</td></c<>	ption>= <value>"</value>	Used to specify trap sinks for snmp or public key for ssh.
		Multiple -p option can be entered with -a add option for trap sink.
	trapsinkserver=	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter=	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor major	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor major critical	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor major critical fatal	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only.
filena	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor major critical fatal me=	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only. Ssh public key file name. For ssh only.
filena	trapsinkserver= trapfilter= info warning minor major critical fatal me=	Trap sink IP address or trap sink server name. For snmp only. Trap filter level. It implies the level and above. For snmp only. Ssh public key file name. For ssh only. TFTP server IP address or server name. For ssh only.

```
swmgt
swmgt -n webserver
swmgt -a start -n snmp
swmgt -a stop -n snmp
swmgt -a mod -n snmp -t automatic
swmgt -a add -n ssh -p "filename=key.pub, server=192.168.1.1, comment=root@server"
swmgt -a del -n ssh -i 1
```

For adding multiple trapsinkserver (SNMP):

```
swmgt -a add -n snmp -p "trapsinkserver=192.168.1.1,trapfilter=info"
    -p "trapsinkserver=192.168.2.1,trapfilter=critical"
```

## sync

#### Usage

sync [-I <Pool Id>]

#### Summary

This command allows the user to check the status of background synchronization.

## Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the current active and their status(es).
-l <pool id=""></pool>	Specifies which Pool to perform sync action on.

## Examples

sync

# target

## Usage

target [-a <action>] [-i <Index>] [-n <Name>]

target -a add [-i <Index>] -n <Name>

target -a del -i <Index>

## Summary

Target will display information about the current target list as well as the ability to add or delete a target.

### Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the current target list.
add	Add a target to the list.
del	Delete a target from the list.
-i <index></index>	Used to specify the index of the target.
-n <name></name>	Used to specify the target's WWNN in hex format, e.g.
	aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff-11-22

```
target
target -a add -n aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff-11-22
target -a del -i 1
```

# topology

# Usage

```
topology [-a <action>] [-v]
```

# Summary

View enclosures topology, the physical connections and devices. For products that support multiple enclosures

only.

# Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays topology information.
-V	View complete information about topology.

# Examples

topology

# transit

### Usage

transit [-a <action>] [-l <PoolId>] [-s <SeqNo>] transit -a start -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> -p <PdId> transit -a stop -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> transit -a pause -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo> transit -a resume -l <PoolId> -s <SeqNo>

Summary

This command allows the user to start, stop, pause or resume a transition as well as to check on the progress of a running transition.

Transition is an operation to replace an used revertible spare in the pool with an appropriate physical drive, which is called the destination drive. The destination drive can be an unconfigured drive, a non-revertible global spare, or a non-revertible dedicated spare to the pool.

During transition, the data on the revertible spare is transferred to the destination drive while IO is going on.

After transition, the destination drive becomes the part of the pool; the revertible spare becomes available for later use.

-a <action></action>	Specifies the action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays the running and paused transitions and their
start	Starts a manual transition.
stop	Stops a transition.
pause	Pauses a transition.
resume	Resumes a paused transition.
-l <pool id=""></pool>	Specifies the pool id, which contains the revertible spare.
-s <sequence num=""></sequence>	Specifies the sequence number of the used revertible spare in the pool.
-p <pd id=""></pd>	Specifies the physical drive ID of the destination drive.

transit transit -a start -1 0 -s 2 -p 10 transit -a stop -1 0 -s 2

# trunk

# Usage

trunk [-a <action>] [-i <trunk id>]

trunk -a add -s "<list of settings>"

## Summary

The trunk command is used to display and modify port trunk settings for the iSCSI host interface.

-a <action></action>		Specifies the action to perform.
	add	Create a new trunk.
	list	Displays trunk information.
	mod	Modify an existing trunk setting.
	del	Delete a trunk.
-i [ <tr< td=""><td>runk id&gt;]</td><td>Port trunk identifier. (0 - 7).</td></tr<>	runk id>]	Port trunk identifier. (0 - 7).
-s ["<	option>= <value>"]</value>	Used to specify which trunk settings to change.
	ctrlid=	Controller ID of Port
	masterport=	Master port of the Trunk. Range: Port ID
	slaveport=	List of ports aggregated in this trunk, excluding the master port
	Range:	Port ID.

trunktype=	trunk type
balance_xor	Transmits based on XOR formula. (Source MAC address is XOR'd
	with destination MAC address) modula slave count. This selects the same
	slave for each destination MAC address and provides load balancing and
	fault tolerance.
lacp	This mode is known as Dynamic Link Aggregation mode. It creates
	aggregation groups that share the same speed and duplex settings. This
	mode requires a switch that supports IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link.
active_standby	Only one slave in the bond isactive. A different slave becomes active if,
	and only if, the active slave fails.
	This mode provides fault tolerance.

```
trunk -a add -s"ctrlid=1,masterport=2,slaveport=3 4"
trunk -a del -i 2
```

# tz

## Usage

tz [-a list] [-d] [-h]

tz -a mod -s "<list of settings>"

# Summary

TZ is used to display or modify the time zone for the controllers

## Options

-a <action></action>	Which action to perform.
list	(Default) Displays current or all the time zone info.
mod	Modify the time zone.
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>	
zone =	Specifies which city name to use, it can check from detail all time zone
	into.
-d	Detail all time zone info. Used with -a list.

## Examples

tz tz -d tz -a mod -s "zone=apia"

# volume

## Usage

volume [-a <action>] [-i <volume ID>] [-p <pool ID>] [-s <settings>]

## Summary

This command allows the user to list, add, modify, delete, export and unexport volume.

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.
	list	(Default) List volume information.
	add	add a volume
	mod	modify volume settings
	del	delete a volume
	export	export a volume
	unexport	un-export a volume
-p <po< td=""><td>ool ID&gt;</td><td>Pool ID.</td></po<>	ool ID>	Pool ID.
		Only valid for add or list action.
-i <vo< td=""><td>lume ID&gt;</td><td>volume ID</td></vo<>	lume ID>	volume ID
-c <volume count=""></volume>		Specify the number of volumes to be created when used with the -a add
		option. If this -c option is used, all the volumes will be created with the
		same settings.
-s "<0	ption>= <value>"</value>	Used to specify what options to change.
		Only valid for add or mod action.

-f

name=	Volume name.
capacity=	Volume capacity.
	For add action. If not specified for not thin-provision supported volume, it
	means to use the max available capacity of the pool.
	For mod action, it means to extend capacity of the volume. It must be
	larger than original capacity.
block=	Block size of the volume.
	The possible parameters are 4KB, 8KB, 16KB, 32KB, 64KB and 128KB. If
	not specified, the default 8KB will be used.
	Only valid for add action.
sector=	Sector size of the volume.
	The possible parameters are 512B, 1KB, 2KB and 4KB.
	If not specified, the default 512B will be used.
	Only valid for add action.
sync=	Sync mode of the volume.
standard	
always	(Defaults)
disabled	
logbias=	Slog behavior. If not specified, for block size is 64KB or 128KB, the default
	thoughtput will be used. For other block size values, the default latency
	will be used.
latency	
throughput	
thinprov=	Thin-provision supported or not.
enable	
disable	
	Force delete the volume.

-V	Verbose mode. Used with -a list.
-у	Enable non-interactive mode.

```
volume -a list
volume -a list -i 1
volume -a list -p 2
volume -a add -p 2 -s "name=test, capacity=20GB, block=8KB, sector=512B"
volume -a add -p 2 -s "name=testvol, capacity=10GB" -c 5
volume -a mod -i 2 -s "name=mytest"
volume -a del -i 2
volume -a export -i 2
volume -a unexport -i 2
```
#### ups

#### Usage

```
ups [-a <action>]
```

```
ups -a list [-v]
```

```
ups -a mod -s "<list of settings>"
```

#### Summary

The ups command allows a user to view and modify ups status and settings. Network UPS is supported for IPv4 protocol only.

#### Options

-a <action></action>		Which action to perform.			
	list	(Default) Displays all current UPS status.			
	mod	Change the settings for UPS.			
-s " <option>=<value>"</value></option>		Used to specify what options to change.			
	detection=	Detection mode setting			
	auto	(Default. Whenever a UPS is detected, it changes the detection mode to			
		"enable".)			
	enable	(Monitors UPS, UPS Settings changes, reports warnings and logs events.)			
	disable	(Monitors Serial UPS only.)			
	ups1=	UPS1 IP address or Domain Name.			
	ups2=	UPS2 IP address or Domain Name.			
	rtr=	Running time remaining threshold in minute. The valid value range is			
		3~20.			
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.			

#### Examples

```
ups -v
ups -a mod -s "ups1=192.168.1.1, rtr=5"
```

#### user

#### Usage

```
user [-a <action>] [-u <username>]
```

user -a add -u <username> -p <privilege> [-s "<list of settings>"]

user -a mod -u <username> [-p <privilege>] [-s "<list of settings>"]

```
user -a del -u <username> [-t <type>]
```

#### Summary

The user command allows a user to view and modify an existing user account.

Both management user and SNMP user are supported.

For management, only a Superuser can create, modify, or delete a user account.

User access levels are: Superuser, Poweruser, Maintenance, and View.

If a password is not specified when the user account is created, there will be no password when you log in.

Maximum password length is 31 characters, no spaces.

For SNMP user, only permission READ\_ONLY is supported now.

The minimum length of password is 8 characters.

Maximum password length is 31 characters, no spaces.

Use the password command to change a password.

#### Options

-a <action>

Which action to perform.

list	(Default) Displays the current users
add	Create a new user.
mod	Modify an existing user.
del	Delete a user.
refresh	Refresh the NAS user.

Specifies the type of user.				
(Default) Management user.				
SNMP user, who can only view subsystem settings through				
Nas user.				
Specifies the username to display, edit or delete.				
Maximum username length is 25 characters, no spaces.				
Specifies the privilege level to set for the user. Management user only.				
Superuser has max control				
Poweruser cannot modify users nor delete configs				
Maintenance user can only perform background tasks				
View user can only view.				
Force delete a user.				
Specifies the user's display full name.				
Specifies an email address for the user.				
Enable/disable this user's account. Default is enable.				
To provide a secure environment, following authentication and privacy				

auth	=	Specifies the authentication protocol.			
	md5	Using MD5 authentication protocol.			
	sha	Using SHA authentication protocol.			
priv=		Specifies the privacy protocol. Only when authentication is set, can this be			
		set.			
	des	Using CBC-DES privacy protocol.			
	aes	Using CFB-AES-128 privacy protocol.			
NAS	user settings:				
group=		Specifies the primary group name which the user belongs to.			
	department	User department.			
	phone	User phone.			
-V		Verbose mode. Used with -a list.			

#### Examples

```
user

user -a add -u newuser -p view -s"name=NewUser,email=MyEmail@yourcompany.com"

Input password: ******

Retype password: ******

Input auth password: ******

Retype auth password: ******

Retype priv password: ******

user -a add -t nas -u nasuser -s "email=aa@123.com"

Input password: ******

Retype password: ******
```

# **CONTACTING TECHNICAL SUPPORT**

PROMISE Technical Support provides several support options for PROMISE users to access information and updates. We encourage you to use one of our electronic services, which provide product information updates for the most efficient service and support.

PROMISE E-Support: https://support.promise.com

PROMISE web site: http://www.promise.com//

When you contact us, please have the following information available:

- Product model and serial number
- Firmware version
- A description of the problem / situation
- System configuration information, including: motherboard and CPU type

Please refer to "Export Service Report" on page 163 to create a service report with the needed information.

## **United States**

580 Cottonwood Drive Milpitas, Ca 95035, USA Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Australia

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### **EMEA**

## Netherlands

Science Park Eindhoven 5228

5692 EG Son, The Netherlands

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### **Austria**

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### France

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Germany

Europaplatz 9 44269 Dortmund, Germany Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Sweden

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Switzerland ITF

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Norway ITF

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Belgium

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Luxembourg

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## **United Kingdom**

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Taiwan

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## China

Room 1108, West Wing, Shi Chuang Plaza, 22 Information Road Shangdi IT Park, Haidian District, Beijing 100085 Fax: 86-10-8857-8015 Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Korea

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## Hong Kong

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Singapore

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

#### Japan

3F, Mura Matsu Bldg, 3-8-5, Hongo Bunkyo-ku Tokyo 113-0033, Japan

Technical Support (E-Support): https://support.promise.com

Web site: http://www.promise.com//

## **Limited Warranty**

PROMISE Technology, Inc. ("PROMISE") warrants that this product, from the time of the delivery of the product to the original end user:

- a) all components, except the cache backup battery, for a period of three (3) years;
- b) the cache backup battery, for a period of one (1) year;
- c) will conform to PROMISE's specifications;
- d) will be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service.

This warranty:

- a) applies only to products which are new and in cartons on the date of purchase;
- b) is not transferable;
- c) is valid only when accompanied by a copy of the original purchase invoice.
- d) Is not valid on spare parts.

This warranty shall not apply to defects resulting from:

- a) improper or inadequate maintenance, or unauthorized modification(s), performed by the end user;
- b) operation outside the environmental specifications for the product;
- c) accident, misuse, negligence, misapplication, abuse, natural or personal disaster, or maintenance by anyone other than a PROMISE or a PROMISE-authorized service center.

## Disclaimer of other warranties

This warranty covers only parts and labor, and excludes coverage on software items as expressly set above.

Except as expressly set forth above, PROMISE disclaims any warranties, expressed or implied, by statute or otherwise, regarding the product, including, without limitation, any warranties for fitness for any purpose, quality, merchantability, non-infringement, or otherwise. PROMISE makes no warranty or representation concerning the suitability of any product for use with any other item. You assume full responsibility for selecting products and for ensuring that the products selected are compatible and appropriate for use with other goods with which they will be used.

PROMISE does not warrant that any product is free from errors or that it will interface without problems with your computer system. It is your responsibility to back up or otherwise save important data before installing any product and continue to back up your important data regularly.

No other document, statement or representation may be relied on to vary the terms of this limited warranty. PROMISE's sole responsibility with respect to any product is to do one of the following:

a) replace the product with a conforming unit of the same or superior product;

b) repair the product.

PROMISE shall not be liable for the cost of procuring substitute goods, services, lost profits, unrealized savings, equipment damage, costs of recovering, reprogramming, or reproducing of programs or data stored in or used with the products, or for any other general, special, consequential, indirect, incidental, or punitive damages, whether in contract, tort, or otherwise, notwithstanding the failure of the essential purpose of the foregoing remedy and regardless of whether PROMISE has been advised of the possibility of such damages. PROMISE is not an insurer. If you desire insurance against such damage, you must obtain insurance from another party.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages for consumer products, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

This warranty gives specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state. This limited warranty is governed by the State of California.

## Your Responsibilities

You are responsible for determining whether the product is appropriate for your use and will interface with your equipment without malfunction or damage. You are also responsible for backing up your data before installing any product and for regularly backing up your data after installing the product. PROMISE is not liable for any damage to equipment or data loss resulting from the use of any product.

## Returning the Product For Repair

If you suspect a product is not working properly, or if you have any questions about your product, contact our Technical Support staff, and be ready to provide the following information:

- Product model and serial number (required)
- Return shipping address
- Daytime phone number
- Description of the problem
- Copy of the original purchase invoice

The technician helps you determine whether the product requires repair. If the product needs repair, the technician issues an RMA (Return Merchandise Authorization) number.

#### Important

Obtain an RMA number from Technical Support **before** you return the product and write the RMA number on the label. The RMA number is essential for tracking your product and providing the proper service.

Return ONLY the specific product covered by the warranty. Do not ship cables, manuals, CDs, etc.

USA and	PROMISE Technology, Inc.
Canada:	Customer Service Dept.
	Attn.: RMA #
	47654 Kato Road
	Fremont, CA 94538
Other	Return the product to your dealer or retailer.
Countries:	Contact them for instructions before shipping the product

You must follow the packaging guidelines for returning products:

- Use the original shipping carton and packaging
- Include a summary of the product's problem(s)
- Write an attention line on the box with the RMA number
- Include a copy of your proof of purchase

You are responsible for the cost of insurance and shipment of the product to PROMISE. Note that damage incurred due to improper transport or packaging is not covered under the Limited Warranty.

When repairing returned product(s), PROMISE may replace defective parts with new or reconditioned parts, or replace the entire unit with a new or reconditioned unit. In the event of a replacement, the replacement unit is under warranty for the remainder of the original warranty term from purchase date, or 30 days, whichever is longer.

PROMISE pays for standard return shipping charges only. You must pay for any additional shipping options, such as express shipping.

## Information for China RoHS

部件名稱	Toxic or Hazardous Substances							
Products Description	鉛 (Pb)	汞 (Hg)	鎘 (Cd)	六價鉻 (Cr6+)	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴二苯醚 (PBDE)		
РСВА	Х	0	0	0	0	0		
Metal parts	Х	0	0	0	0	0		
Plastic parts	0	0	0	0	0	0		
Cable	0	0	0	0	Ó	0		
Power Supply	Х	0	0	0	0	0		
Battery	Х	0	0	0	0	0		
Package	0	0	0	0	0	0		
本表格依據 SJ/T 11364 的規定编制。 This table is prepared in accordance with the provisions of SJ/T 11364. O:表示该有害物质在该部件所有均質材料中的含量均在 GB/T 26572 规定的限量要求以下。 O:Indicates that said hazardous substance contained in all of the homogeneous materials for this part is under the								

limitation requirement of GB/T 26572.

X:表示该有害物质至少在该部件的某一均質材料中的含量超出 GB/T 26572 规定的限量要求。

X: Indicates that said hazardous substance contained in at least one of the homogeneous materials used for this part is above the limit requirement of GB/T 26572.

此产品符合 EU RoHS 指令 2011/65/EU

The product complies with EU RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU

生產日期代碼參考路徑:http://www.promise.com/Manufacturing-Dates-of-Products